Printed at the Mathematical Centre, 49, 2e Boerhaavestraat, Amsterdam.
The Mathematical Centre, founded the 11-th of February 1946, is a nonprofit institution aiming at the promotion of pure mathematics and its applications. It is sponsored by the Netherlands Government through the Netherlands Organization for the Advancement of Pure Research (Z.W.O).

# TRANSCENDENCE <br> IN FIELDS OF POSITIVE CHARACTERISTIC 

J.M. GEIJSEL

CONTENTS
Acknowledgements ..... VII
Summary ..... vill
General introduction and summary ..... 1x
O. Notations and preliminaries ..... $0.1-0.5$
I. Introduction ..... 1.1-1.53

1. The field $\Phi$ ..... 1.1
2. The functions $\psi_{k}$ and $\psi$1.7
3. Linear functions and the $\Delta$-operator ..... 1.20
4. The functions $J_{n}$ ..... 1.28
5. Analysis on $\Phi$ ..... 1.31
II. Transcendence in $\Phi$ ..... 2.1-2.19
6. Preliminaries ..... 2.1
7. Summary of known results on transcendence in $\Phi$ ..... 2.9
III. On the transcendence of certain power series ofalgebraic elements of $\Phi$3.1-3.28
8. Liouville numbers3.1
9. Transcendental values of gap-series ..... 3.3
10. Transcendence measures ..... 3.16
11. A transcendence measure for certain Liouville numbers ..... 3.25
IV. On the transcendence of certain values taken by E-functions ..... 4.1-4.10
12. A generalisation of Wade's analogue of the Gelfond-Schneider theorem ..... 4.1
ReferencesList of definitionsIndex of special symbols

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

At the completion of this monograph $I$ wish to thank dr. H. Jager for his stimulating accompaniment and supervision of this research and Prof. dr. R. Tijdeman for his valuable advises and improvements of the text. Moreover, I thank the Mathematical Centre for the opportunity to publish this monograph in their series Mathematical Centre Tracts and all those at the Mathematical Centre who have contributed to its technical realization.

SUMMARY

In this monograph $\Phi$ denotes an algebraically closed field, complete with respect to its non-archimedean valuation and containing the field $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{x})$ of rational functions in one variable over a finite field $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}$. We study the transcendence over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{x})$ of elements of $\Phi$.

In the first part of this monograph we develop the analytic tools (a.o. a maximum-modules theorem and a product formula for entire functions), which we need in the transcendence theory in the second part.

In the theory of transcendental numbers one starts with a field $K$ with a subfield $k$ and one studies properties of those elements of $K$ which are transcendental over $k$. In complex transcendental number theory, the most common case, one takes for $K$ the field $\mathbb{C}$ of complex numbers and for the subfield $k$ its prime field, i.e. the field $Q$ of rational numbers. Of the various properties enjoyed by $\mathbb{C}$ we emphasize the following two: (i) the valuation of $\mathbb{C}$ is archimedean, (ii) the characteristic of $\mathbb{C}$ is zero.

In p-adic transcendental number theory the situation has changed with respect to property (i): here one takes for $K$ an algebraically closed, with respect to its valuation complete field $\mathbb{C}_{p}$, which is an extension of the field $Q_{p}$ of p-adic numbers. For $k$ one takes again the prime field $\mathbb{Q}$.

In this monograph we move a step further from the classical case; not only will our field $K$ be provided with a non-archimedean valuation, but moreover, its characteristic will be positive.

Now new difficulties arise, which did not occur in the change from the complex to the p-adic case. We will illustrate this by an example.

One of the most famous theorems of classical transcendental number theory is the theorem of Gelfond and Schneider, which says that if $\alpha$ and $\beta$ are non-zero algebraic numbers, $\alpha \neq 1, \beta$ not rational, then $\alpha^{\beta}$ is transcendental. This is in fact a theorem on the exponential function and its inverse, the logarithm, for $\alpha^{\beta}$ is defined as $\exp (\beta \log \alpha)$. If one sets out to prove this theorem in the p-adic case the definition of $\alpha^{\beta}$ presents no difficulties. The exponential function is again defined by the power series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{z^{n}}{n!}$, the only difference being that in the p-adic case this series is not convergent for all $z$. But in our case of positive characteristic this definition loses its meaning and it is not at all clear what we must regard as the equivalent of $\alpha^{\beta}$.

In this thesis $k$ will be the field $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ of rational functions in one variable over a finite field $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ and $K$ will be an algebraically closed, complete extension of $k$, called $\Phi$. L. Carlitz indicated in 1935 a function $\psi$, which might be regarded as the equivalent of the exponential function and L.I. Wade proved in 1941 the Gelfond-Schneider theorem for this function.

In chapter I we start with the construction of $\Phi$ and a study of the Carlitz- $\psi-f_{u n c t i o n, ~ w h i c h ~ w e ~ i n t r o d u c e ~ i n ~ a ~ w a y ~ d i f f e r e n t ~ f r o m ~ C a r l i t z ' . ~}^{\text {' }}$ Further we define the operators $\Delta_{k}$ for linear functions and we introduce the class of functions $J_{n}$, which may be regarded as analogues of Bessel functions. The main section, section 5, of the first chapter is devoted to analysis on $\Phi$. Mainly we follow the work of U. Güntzer (1966), the concept of hooking-radius is fundamental in the study of the occurrence and location of zeros. The Maximum MOdulus Theorem and the Product Formula for Entire Functions are both needed for the Siegel-Schneider method in chapter IV.

Chapter II gives a survey of known results on transcendence in $\Phi$.
In chapter III we introduce the concept of transcendence measure in $\Phi$ and we give an analogue of P.L. Cijsouw's result on series for which a certain gap-condition is fulfilled. Moreover, with the same method, we generalize a result of S.M. Spencer (1952).

In chapter IV we define the class of $E^{0}$-functions and we prove that if $\alpha, \beta \in \Phi, \alpha \neq 0$ and $\beta \notin \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ and if $f_{1}, f_{2}, \ldots, f_{n}$ are $E^{0}$-functions such that $\Delta_{k} f_{\nu^{\prime}} k \in \mathbb{N}, 1 \leq \nu \leq n$ are polynomials in $f_{1}, f_{2}, \ldots, f_{n}$ satisfying certain conditions, then at least one of the $2 n+1$ elements $\beta, f_{1}(\alpha), f_{2}(\alpha), \ldots, f_{n}(\alpha), f_{1}(\alpha \beta), f_{2}(\alpha \beta), \ldots, f_{n}(\alpha \beta)$ is transcendental over $\mathrm{IF}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$. This theorem contains, among others, the Wade analogue of the Gelfond-Schneider theorem.

## O. NOTATIONS AND PRELIMINARIES

In this thesis we adopt the following notations:

| $\emptyset$ | The empty set. |
| :---: | :---: |
| $A \backslash B$ | The set of elements which are contained in the set $A$ but not in the set $B$. |
| $f: A \rightarrow B$ | A function $f$ which adjoins to every element of the set $A$ an element of the set $B$; $A$ is called the domain of $f$. |
| f\|V | The restriction of $f$ to a subset $V$ of the domain of $f$. |
| gof | The composition of the functions $f: A \rightarrow B$ and $g: B \rightarrow C$. |
| N | The set of natural numbers. |
| $\mathrm{N}^{0}$ | $\mathbb{N} \cup\{0\}$. |
| $\mathbb{Z}$ | The ring of rational integers. |
| Q | The field of rational numbers. |
| $\mathbb{R}$ | The field of real numbers. |
| C | The field of complex numbers. |
| $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ | The finite field of $q$ elements, where $q=p^{n}$ for a certain $\mathrm{n} \in \mathbb{N}$ and a prime $\mathrm{p} \in \mathbb{N}$. |
| K* | The multiplicative group formed by the non-zero elements of the field K . |
| $R\left[t_{1}, t_{2}\right.$, | The ring of polynomials in the $n$ variables $t_{1} ; t_{2}, \ldots, t_{n}$ over a commutative ring $R$ with identity. |
| $K(t)$ | The field of rational functions in $t$ with coefficients in a field K. |
| $\square$ | The end of a proof. |

As usual an empty sum has to be taken equal to zero and an empty product equal to one.

For convenience of the reader we formulate some standard notions and theorems, used throughout this thesis.
0.1. DEFINITION. Let $R$ be a:commutative ring with identity and let $P, Q \in R[t]$. Then $P$ is called a divisor of $Q$, notation $P \mid \Omega$, if there exists an $R \in R[t]$ such that $Q=P R_{0}$
$P$ is called irreducible if $P$ is not a unit and has no divisors in
$R[t]$ other than units and associates of $P$.
0.2
$P$ is called monic if the leading coefficient of $P$ is the identity of R.

P is called primitive if its coefficients have no common divisor in $R$ (other than units).
0.2. DEFINITION. Let $K_{1}$ and $K_{2}$ be fields with a common subfield $k$. A monomorphism $\sigma: K_{1} \rightarrow K_{2}$ for which

$$
\sigma(\alpha)=\alpha, \quad \alpha \in \mathrm{k}
$$

is called a k-monomorphism.
0.3. THEOREM. Let $R$ be a commutative ring with identity. Every symmetric polynomial $P$ from $R\left[t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{n}\right]$ of degree $m$ can be written uniquely in the form

$$
\sum c_{\lambda_{1}} \ldots \lambda_{n} \sigma_{1}^{\lambda_{1}}{ }_{\sigma_{2}}^{\lambda_{2}} \ldots \sigma_{n}^{\lambda_{n}}, \quad c_{\lambda_{1}} \ldots \lambda_{n} \in R
$$

with

$$
\lambda_{1}+2 \lambda_{2}+\ldots+n \lambda_{n} \leq m
$$

where $\sigma_{1}, \sigma_{2}, \ldots, \sigma_{n}$ are the elementary symmetric functions of $t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{n}$. PROOF. See e.g. VAN DER WAERDEN (1960), §29.
0.4. COROLLARY. Let $R$ be a commutative ring with identity. Let $P \in R\left[t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{n}\right]$ be a symmetric polynomial. Let $\beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{n}$ be the zeros of a monic polynomial from $R[t]$. Then

$$
P\left(\beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{n}\right) \in R
$$

0.5. THEOREM. Let $R$ be a commutative ring with identity. If the polynomial P from theorem 0.3 is homogeneous of degree $k$ in each $t_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq n$, then, in the notation of theorem 0.3 , we have

$$
\lambda_{1}+\lambda_{2}+\ldots+\lambda_{n} \leq k
$$

PROOF. See O. PERRON, Satz 69.
0.6. COROLLARY. Let $R$ be a commutative ring with identity, let $Q \in R[t]$ be of degree $N \geq 1$ and let $\beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{N}$ denote the zeros of $Q$. Put

$$
Q(t)=A \prod_{i=1}^{N}\left(t-\beta_{i}\right), \quad A \in R
$$

and

$$
D:=A^{2 N-2} \prod_{1 \leq i<j \leq N}\left(\beta_{i}-\beta_{j}\right)^{2}
$$

Then $\mathrm{D} \in \mathrm{R}$.
PROOF. $\Pi_{1 \leq i<j \leq N}\left(\beta_{i}-\beta_{j}\right)^{2}$ is a homogeneous symmetric polynomial in $\beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{N}$ of total degree $N(N-1)$ and of degree $2(N-1)$ in $\beta_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq N$. If $\sigma_{1}, \sigma_{2}, \ldots, \sigma_{N}$ denote the elementary symmetric functions of $\beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{N}$, then it follows from the theorems 0.3 and 0.5 that

$$
\prod_{1 \leq i<j \leq N}\left(\beta_{i}-\beta_{j}\right)^{2}=\sum c_{\lambda_{1}} \ldots \lambda_{N}{ }_{\sigma_{1}}^{\alpha_{1}} \ldots \sigma_{N}^{\lambda_{N}}
$$

with $C_{\lambda_{1}} \ldots \lambda_{N} \in R$ and $\lambda_{1}+\lambda_{2}+\ldots+\lambda_{N} \leq 2(N-1)$. Since $A \sigma_{i} \in R$ it follows
that $D \in R . \quad$

For an introduction to finite fields we refer to I.T. ADAMSON (1964), Ch.IV. We shall frequently use the following
0.7. PROPERTY. For every finite field $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ one has
(0.7.1) $\prod_{c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}}(t-c)=t^{q-1}-1$;
(0.7.2) $\quad c^{q}=c, \quad c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}$.

Finally we shall recall some notions and properties in algebraic extensions of a field.
0.8. DEFINITION. Let $k, K$ be fields with $k \subset K$. Then $\alpha \in K$ is called algebraic over $k$ if there exists a non-trivial polynomial $P \in k[t]$ such that $P(\alpha)=0$.

If $\alpha \in K$ is not algebraic over $k$, then $\alpha$ is called transcendental over k .
0.9. THEOREM. Let $\mathrm{k}, \mathrm{K}$ be fields, $\mathrm{k} \subset \mathrm{K}$ and let $\alpha \in \mathrm{K}$ be algebraic over k . Then there is one and (apart from an arbitrary unit factor) only one irreducible polynomial $\mathrm{P} \in \mathrm{k}[\mathrm{t}]$ such that $\mathrm{P}(\alpha)=0$. There is exactly one such polynomial which is monic.

PROOF. See O. ZARISKI and P. SAMUEL (1958), Ch.II §2, Cor.th.1. $\square$
0.10. DEFINITION. Let $\mathrm{k}, \mathrm{K}$ be fields, $\mathrm{k} \subset \mathrm{K}$, and let $\alpha \in \mathrm{K}$ be algebraic over $k$. Then the degree of an irreducible polynomial $P \in k[t]$ for which $P(\alpha)=0$ is called the degree of $\alpha$ (with respect to $k$ ).
0.11. DEFINITION. Let $k$ be a field. Let $P \in k[t]$ be given by

$$
P(t)=a_{n} t^{n}+a_{n-1} t^{n-1}+\ldots+a_{1} t+a_{0}, \quad a_{i} \in k
$$

The derivative $P^{\prime}$ of $P$ is defined by

$$
P^{\prime}(t):=n a_{n} t^{n-1}+(n-1) a_{n-1} t^{n-2}+\ldots+a_{1}
$$

where

$$
n a_{n}:=\sum_{\nu=1}^{n} a_{n}
$$

0.12. DEFINITION. Let $k, K$ be fields, $k \subset K$ and let $\alpha \in K$ be algebraic over $k$ of degree $n$. The unique, monic, irreducible polynomial $P \in k[t]$ of degree n for which $\mathrm{P}(\alpha)=0$ is called the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$ over k .

An irreducible polynomial $P \in k[t]$ is called separable if $P^{\prime} \neq 0$. An arbitrary polynomial $P \in k[t]$ is called separable if all its irreducible factors are separable.

The element $\alpha \in \mathrm{K}$ is called separable algebraic over k if the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$ over $k$ is separable.

The field K is called a (separable) algebraic extension of k if every element of K is (separable) algebraic over k .
0.13. THEOREM. Let k be a field of characteristic $\mathrm{p} \neq 0$. An irreducible polynomial $\mathrm{P} \in \mathrm{k}[\mathrm{t}]$ is not separable if and only if it has the form

$$
\begin{aligned}
P(t)=a_{0}+a_{1} t^{p}+a_{2} t^{2 p}+\ldots+a_{n} t^{n p}, n \geq 1, a_{i} \in k, & a_{0} \neq 0 \\
& a_{n} \neq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

PROOF. See I.T. ADAMSON (1964), Ch.I, th.5.3 or O. ZARISKI and P. SAMUEL (1958), Ch.II §5. $\square$
0.14. COROLLARY. Let $\mathrm{k}, \mathrm{K}$ be fields of characteristic $\mathrm{p} \neq 0, \mathrm{k} \subset \mathrm{K}$. If $\alpha \in K$ is algebraic over $k$, then there exists an $e \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ such that $\alpha^{p^{\mathrm{e}}}$ is separable algebraic over $k$. Moreover, for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$ with $n>e$ the element $\alpha \mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{n}}$ is separable algebraic over k .

## CHAPTER I

## INTRODUCTION

## 1. THE FIELD $\Phi$

Let $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ be the finite field of $q$ elements where $q$ is a positive power of the prime number $p$. We denote the ring of polynomials with coefficients in $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ by $\mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ and its quotient field by $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$.

For all non-zero elements of $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}]$ we define the (logarithmic) nonarchimedean valuation dg by

$$
\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{E}:=\text { degree of } \mathrm{E} \text {; }
$$

furthermore we put

$$
\mathrm{dg} 0:=-\infty .
$$

Hence for all non-zero elements $E \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ the valuation is a non-negative integer.

For the elements of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ we define the valuation as follows: if $E \neq 0$ and $F \neq 0$ are two elements of $\mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$, then

$$
\mathrm{dg}\left(\frac{E}{\mathrm{~F}}\right):=\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{E}-\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{~F} .
$$

Clearly, if $\frac{E}{F}=\frac{E^{\prime}}{F^{\prime}}$, then $d g\left(\frac{E}{F}\right)=d g\left(\frac{E^{\prime}}{F^{\prime}}\right)$.
1.1. THEOREM. The valuation $d g$ of $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ determines a Hausdorff topology on $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ and for each $\alpha \in \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ a fundamental system of neighbourhoods of $\alpha$ is given by

$$
\{\dot{( }(\alpha, n) \mid n=1,2, \ldots\},
$$

1.2
where

$$
\mathrm{U}(\alpha, \mathrm{n})=\left\{\beta \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\overline{\mathrm{X}}) \mid \operatorname{dg}(\alpha-\beta)<-\mathrm{n}\right\}
$$

PROOF. See E. WEISS (1963), prop. 1-1-2 or E. ARTIN (1967), Ch. I th. $4 . \square$ 1.2. DEFINITION. A sequence $\left\{\alpha_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$ of elements of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ is said to be convergent (in $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ ) if an element $\alpha \in \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ exists such that the following condition is satisfied: for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ there is a $k_{0} \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for $\mathrm{k}>\mathrm{k}_{0}$

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(\alpha-\alpha_{k}\right)<-n .
$$

The sequence $\left\{\alpha_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$ is called a Cauchy-sequence if it satisfies the following condition: given any $n \in \mathbb{N}, a k_{0} \in \mathbb{N}$ exists such that for each $\mathrm{k}>\mathrm{k}_{\mathrm{o}}, \ell>\mathrm{k}_{0}$

$$
d g\left(\alpha_{k}-\alpha_{\ell}\right)<-n
$$

1.3. THEOREM. Let K be a valued field. Then a unique valued field L exists such that
(i) $K$ is a subfield of L ,
(ii) the valuation on $L$ restricted to $K$ coincides with the valuation on $K$, (iii) every Cauchy-sequence in $L$ is convergent,
(iv) $K$ is dense in $L$.

PROOF. See E. WEISS (1963), th. 1-7-1 or E. ARTIN (1967), Ch. I §6.

The valued field $L$ is called the completion of the valued field K. A valued field is called complete if it coincides with its completion, i.e. when every Cauchy-sequence in it is convergent.

The completion of the field $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ with its valuation $d g$ will in the sequel be denoted by $F$, the valuation on $F$ will also be denoted by dg. Note that $\{\mathrm{dg} \alpha \mid \alpha \in \mathcal{F}\}=\mathbb{Z} \cup\{-\infty\}$.

The next step is that we go over to the algebraic closure $\Omega$ of $F$. (For a definition of algebraic closure, see B.L. VAN DER WAERDEN (1960), §62.) To define a valuation on $\Omega$, which coincides with $d g$ on $F$ we first consider finite extensions of $F$.

Let $E$ be a finite extension of a field $K$ of degree $[E: K]=n$.

We shall define the norm of an element of $E$ with respect to $K$ and we shall mention some properties which we shall need in the future. For a detailed exposition we refer to the book of O. ZARISKI \& P. SAMUEL, Ch. II § 10 .

Let $\omega_{1}, \omega_{2}, \ldots, \omega_{n}$ be a basis for $E$ over $K$, then for every $\alpha \in E$ and i $\epsilon\{1,2, \ldots, n\}$ there exist $a_{i j} \in K$ such that

$$
\alpha \omega_{i}=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} \omega_{j}
$$

The $n \times n$-matrix $\left(a_{i j}\right)_{i, j}$ will be denoted by (a) and the $n \times n$-unit-matrix by (e). The so-called field polynomial of $\alpha$

$$
\operatorname{det}(t(e)-(a))
$$

is a monic polynomial of degree $n$ in $t$ which does not depend on the choice of the basis. It has the form

$$
t^{n}+b_{n-1} t^{n-1}+\ldots+b_{1} t+b_{0}
$$

where $b_{i} \in K, i=0,1, \ldots, n-1$ and

$$
\mathrm{b}_{0}=(-1)^{\mathrm{n}} \operatorname{det}(\mathrm{a})
$$

We define the norm $N_{E \rightarrow K}(\alpha)$ of $\alpha \in E$ with respect to $K$ by

$$
N_{E \rightarrow K}(\alpha):=\operatorname{det}(a)=(-1)^{n_{b}} b_{0}
$$

Hence $N_{E \rightarrow K}(\alpha)$ is an element of $K$. Furthermore we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& N_{E \rightarrow K}(b)=b^{n}, \quad b \in K, \\
& N_{E \rightarrow K}(\alpha \beta)=N_{E \rightarrow K}(\alpha) \cdot N_{E \rightarrow K} \quad(\beta), \quad \alpha, \beta \in E .
\end{aligned}
$$

Finally, if $L$ is a finite extension of $E$, then

$$
N_{L \rightarrow K}(\beta)=N_{E \rightarrow K}\left(N_{L \rightarrow E}(\beta)\right), \quad \beta \in L
$$

## 1.4

1.4. THEOREM. Let K be a field complete with respect to a (logarithmic) non-archimedean valuation dg and let E be a finite extension of K . Then there exists a unique extension of the valuation dg on K to E , which will be denoted by $\mathrm{dg}_{\mathrm{E}}$. For all $\alpha \in \mathrm{E}$ we have

$$
\operatorname{dg}_{E}(\alpha)=\frac{\operatorname{dg}\left(N_{E \rightarrow K}(\alpha)\right)}{[E: K]} .
$$

The field E is complete with respect to this valuation $\mathrm{dg}_{\mathrm{E}}$.
PROOF. See E. WEISS (1966), th.2-2-10 or E. ARTIN (1967), Ch. I, th. 7.
In view of theorem 1.4 we define $\mathrm{dg}_{\Omega}: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \cup\{-\infty\}$ by

$$
\mathrm{dg}_{\Omega}(\alpha):=\mathrm{dg}_{F(\alpha)}(\alpha),
$$

where $\mathrm{dg}_{F(\alpha)}$ is the unique valuation of the finite extension $F(\alpha)$ of $F$, which extends dg . Then $\mathrm{dg}_{\Omega}$ is a valuation of $\Omega$.
1.5. PROPERTIES OF $\Omega$. With $\mathbb{F}_{q}$, the field $\Omega$ has characteristic p. (Recall that $q$ is a power of $p$.$) Hence$
(1.5.1) $\quad(u+v)^{p^{n}}=u^{p^{n}}+v^{p^{n}}, \quad n \in \mathbb{N}^{0} ; u, v \in \Omega$.

The valuation $\mathrm{dg}_{\Omega}$ is non-archimedean. Therefore we have for all $\mathrm{u}, \mathrm{v} \in \Omega$
(1.5.2) $\quad \operatorname{dg}_{\Omega}(u v)=d g_{\Omega}(u)+d g_{\Omega}(v)$
and
(1.5.3) $\quad d_{\Omega}(u+v) \leq \max \left(d g_{\Omega}(u), d g_{\Omega}(v)\right)$.

If $\operatorname{dg}_{\Omega}(u) \neq d g_{\Omega}(v)$, we even have

$$
\mathrm{dg}_{\Omega}(u+v)=\max \left(\mathrm{dg}_{\Omega}(u), \mathrm{dg}_{\Omega}(v)\right)
$$

The following example shows that the valued field $\Omega$ with $\mathrm{dg}_{\Omega}$ as its valuation is not complete. Define the sequence $\left\{\alpha_{n}\right\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$ by

$$
\alpha_{n}:=\sum_{\nu=0}^{n} x^{-q^{\nu}+1 / q^{\nu}} .
$$

Since $\Omega$ is algebraically closed, $\alpha_{n} \in \Omega$. We have

$$
\operatorname{dg}_{\Omega}\left(\alpha_{n+1}-\alpha_{n}\right)=-q^{n+1}+\frac{1}{q^{n+1}}, \quad n \in \mathbb{N}^{0}
$$

Hence by (1.5.3) $\left\{\alpha_{n}\right\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$ is a Cauchy sequence in $\Omega$. Suppose that the sequence is convergent. Call its limit $\alpha$. Then according to corollary 0.14, there exists an $e \in \mathbb{N}$, such that $\alpha q^{e}$ is separable algebraic over $F$.

It follows from the theorem of KRASNER (see e.g. E. ARTIN (1967), Ch. II th. 8) that for $n$ chosen sufficiently large

$$
F\left(\alpha^{q^{e}}\right) \subset F\left(\alpha_{n}^{q^{e}}\right)
$$

and therefore

$$
\alpha^{q^{e}}-\alpha_{n}^{q^{e}} \in F\left(\alpha_{n}^{q^{e}}\right)
$$

Hence $\alpha^{q^{e}}-\alpha_{n}^{q^{e}}$ is algebraic over $F$ of degree $\mu_{n}$. say, and

$$
\mu_{n} \mid q^{n-e}
$$

From the definition of $\mathrm{dg}_{\Omega}$ we see that $\mu_{n}{d g_{\Omega}}\left(\alpha^{q^{e}}-\alpha q_{n}\right)$ equals the valuation of an element of $F$ and hence

$$
\mu_{n} \operatorname{dg}_{\Omega}\left(\alpha^{q^{\mathrm{e}}}-\alpha_{n}^{\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{e}}}\right) \in \mathbb{Z}
$$

On the other hand we have

$$
\mathrm{dg}_{\Omega}\left(\alpha^{q^{e}}-\alpha_{n}^{q^{e}}\right)=-q^{n+1+e}+\frac{1}{q^{n+1-e}}
$$

1.6

Thus $q^{\text {n+1-e }} \mid \mu_{n}$, which contradicts $\mu_{n} \mid q^{\text {n-e }}$.
Our final step is that we form the completion $\Phi$ of $\Omega$ with respect to $\mathrm{dg}_{\Omega}$. (See theorem 1.3.) That this is the last step in the process of forming algebraic closures and completions follows from
1.6. THEOREM. $\Phi$ is algebraically closed.

PROOF. See E. ARTIN (1967), Ch. II, th. 12.
1.7. RECAPITULATION. Starting with $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ we have obtained a field $\Phi$ with a (logarithmic) non-archimedean valuation dg, i.e.
(1.7.1) $d g(u v)=d g u+d g v, \quad u, v \in \Phi$,
(1.7.2) $\mathrm{dg}(\mathrm{u}+\mathrm{v}) \leq \max (\mathrm{dg} u, d g \mathrm{v}), \quad \mathrm{u}, \mathrm{v} \in \Phi$,
and if $d g \mathrm{u} \neq \mathrm{dg} \mathrm{v}$, then

$$
d g(u+v)=\max (d g u, d g v) .
$$

From (1.7.2) it follows that
(1.7.3) $\quad\{d g \alpha \mid \alpha \in \Phi\}=Q \cup\{-\infty\}$.

The field $\Phi$ is algebraically closed and complete with respect to the valuation dg . It contains the field $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ and the valuation dg on $\Phi$ restricted to $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ coincides with the valuation dg on $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$. Furthermore $\dot{\Phi}$ has characteristic p; hence
(1.7.4) $(u+v)^{p^{n}}=u^{p^{n}}+v^{p^{n}}, \quad n \in \mathbb{N}^{0}, u, v \in \Phi$.

In view of the completeness of $\Phi$ and the fact that the valuation $d g$ is nonarchimedean, a series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \alpha_{n}, \alpha_{n} \in \Phi$ is convergent if and only if
$\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \operatorname{dg} \alpha_{n}=-\infty$.
In this thesis the role played by the field $\Phi$ can be compared with that of $\mathbb{C}$ in the classical case; $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}]$ and $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ take the part of $\mathbb{Z}$ and Q. respectively.
1.8. THEOREM. The field $\Phi$ is not locally compact.

PROOF. Suppose $\Phi$ is locally compact. Then it follows from a theorem which can be found e.g. in N. BOURBAKI (1964), Chap. VI $\S 5$ no. 1, prop. 2, that the vailuation of $\Phi$ is discrete. But this contradicts (1.7.3). $\square$
2. THE FUNCTIONS $\psi_{k}$ AND $\psi$
2.1. DEFINITION. We define the elements $F_{k}, L_{k}\left(k \in \mathbb{N}^{0}\right)$ of $\mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ as follows

$$
\begin{aligned}
& F_{k}:=\prod_{j=0}^{k-1}\left(x^{q^{k}}-x^{q^{j}}\right), \quad k=1,2, \ldots ; \\
& F_{0}:=1 \\
& L_{k}:=\prod_{j=1}^{k}\left(x^{q^{j}}-x\right), \quad k=1,2, \ldots ; \\
& L_{0}:=1
\end{aligned}
$$

2.2. REMARK. For $\mathrm{k} \geq 1$ we have the relations
(a) $\quad \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}}=\left(\mathrm{X}^{\mathrm{q}}-\mathrm{X}\right) \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}-1}^{\mathrm{q}}$,
(b) $\quad L_{k}=\left(X^{q^{k}}-X\right) L_{k-1}$.

Furthermore, we note that for $k \geq 0$
$\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{kq}{ }^{\mathrm{k}}$,
$d g L_{k}=\frac{q}{q-1}\left(q^{k}-1\right)$.

In the following we shall see that $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}}$ can be compared with k ! in the classical case.
1.8
2.3. DEFINITION. For $k \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ the polynomial $\psi_{k} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x][t]$ is defined by

$$
\psi_{\mathrm{k}}(\mathrm{t}):=\prod_{\substack{\mathrm{E} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}} \\ \mathrm{dgE}<\mathrm{k}}}[\mathrm{x}](\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{E})
$$

Moreover, we put

$$
\psi_{-1}(t):=1
$$

N.B. $\psi_{0}(t)=t$.

The polynomials $\psi_{k}$ were introduced by L. CARLITZ (1935). In the following we shall mention some of his results, which we shall need in this thesis.
2.4. THEOREM. (Carlitz) The polynomial $\psi_{k}, k \in \mathbb{I N}^{0}$ has the following representation
(2.4.1)

$$
\psi_{k}(t)=\sum_{j=0}^{k}(-1)^{j} \frac{F_{k}}{\substack{q^{k-j} \\ j}} \mathrm{~F}_{k-j} \mathrm{q}^{k-j}
$$

Furthermore, the function $\psi_{k}$ has the properties:
(2.4.2)

$$
\psi_{k}(t+u)=\psi_{k}(t)+\psi_{k}(u), \quad t, u \in \Phi,
$$

(2.4.3) $\quad \psi_{k}(c t)=c \psi_{k}(t), \quad c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}, t \in \Phi$,
(2.4.4) $\psi_{k}(x t)-X \psi_{k}(t)=\left(\mathrm{X}^{\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{k}}}-\mathrm{X}\right) \psi_{\mathrm{k}-1}^{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{t}), \quad \mathrm{t} \in \Phi$,
(2.4.5)

$$
\psi_{\mathrm{k}}\left(\mathrm{X}^{\mathrm{k}}\right)=\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}} .
$$

PROOF. For $k=0$ the theorem is trivial.
Suppose the formulae are correct for $k=0,1, \ldots, k$. From the definition of $\psi_{k+1}$ we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\psi_{k+1}(t) & =\prod_{d g E<k+1}(t-E)= \\
& =\left(\prod_{d g E<k}(t-E)\right) \prod_{c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}}^{\prod_{d g E<k}} \prod^{\Pi}\left(t-c x^{k}-E\right) \\
& =\psi_{k}(t) \prod_{c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}}^{\prod_{k}} \psi_{k}\left(t-c x^{k}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

From (2.4.2), (2.4.3) and (2.4.5) for $k=k$ we have

$$
\psi_{K}\left(t-c x^{K}\right)=\psi_{K}(t)-c F_{K}
$$

Since

$$
\prod_{c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}}(t-c)=t^{q-1}-1
$$

we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\psi_{K+1}(t) & =\psi_{K}(t)\left\{\psi_{K}^{q-1}(t)-F_{K}^{q-1}\right\}= \\
& =\psi_{K}^{q}(t)-F_{K}^{q-1} \psi_{K}(t)
\end{aligned}
$$

Now using (2.4.1) for $k=k$ and remark 2.2a,b, we obtain formula (2.4.1) for $k=k+1$ by a straightforward computation. Using (1.7.4) and (0.7.2), the formulae (2.4.2) and (2.4.3) for $k=\kappa+1$ follow immediately from (2.4.1). It only remains to prove (2.4.4) and (2.4.5) for $k=k+1$. Using remark $2.2(\mathrm{a})$, it follows from (2.4.1) for $k=k+1$ that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \psi_{\kappa+1}(x t)-x \psi_{\kappa+1}(t)=\sum_{j=0}^{K}(-1)^{j} \frac{F_{K+1}}{L_{j}^{q^{K+1-j}}{ }_{F}}\left(x^{q^{K+1-j}}-j-x\right) t^{q^{K+1-j}} \\
& =\sum_{j=0}^{\kappa}(-1)^{j} \frac{\left(x^{q^{\kappa+1}}-x\right) F_{k}^{q}}{L_{j}^{q^{\kappa+1-j}{ }_{F}^{q}} t_{k-j}^{q^{k+1-j}}} \\
& =\left(x^{q^{K+1}}-x\right) \psi_{\kappa}^{q}(t) \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Substituting $t=x^{k}$ in this formula gives

$$
\psi_{\kappa+1}\left(x^{\kappa+1}\right)=\left(x^{q^{\kappa+1}}-x\right) \psi_{\kappa}^{q}\left(x^{\kappa}\right)=\left(x^{q^{\kappa+1}}-x\right) F_{\kappa}^{q}=F_{\kappa+1}
$$

2.5. THEOREM. For $\mathrm{A} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{x}]$ and $\mathrm{k} \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ we have

$$
\frac{\psi_{k}(A)}{F_{k}} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}] .
$$

PROOF. If

$$
A=a_{m} x^{m}+a_{m-1} x^{m-1}+\ldots+a_{1} x+a_{0}, \quad a_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}, i=0,1, \ldots, m
$$

we have from formulae (2.4.2) and (2.4.3)

$$
\psi_{k}(A)=\sum_{i=0}^{m} a_{i} \psi_{k}\left(x^{i}\right) .
$$

Hence it is sufficient to prove that
(2.5.1) $\quad \frac{\psi_{k}\left(x^{i}\right)}{F_{k}} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x], \quad i, k \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$.

First we remark that for $i \in \mathbf{N}^{0}$
(2.5.2) $\quad \frac{\psi_{0}\left(x^{i}\right)}{F_{0}}=x^{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$.

Furthermore we have by the definition of $\psi_{k}$
(2.5.3) $\quad \psi_{k}\left(x^{i}\right)=0, \quad k \in \mathbb{N} ; i=0,1, \ldots, k-1$.

Hence (2.5.1) is satisfied for $k \in \mathbb{N}^{0}, i=0,1, \ldots, k-1$ and $i \in \mathbb{N}^{0}, k=0$. Suppose we have proved (2.5.1) for $k \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ and $i=0,1, \ldots, v-1$. From relation (2.4.4) and remark 2.2a we have for $k \in \mathbb{N}$
(2.5.4) $\quad \frac{\psi_{k}\left(x^{\nu}\right)}{F_{k}}=x \frac{\psi_{k}\left(x^{\nu-1}\right)}{F_{k}}+\left(\frac{\psi_{k-1}\left(x^{\nu-1}\right)}{F_{k-1}}\right)^{q}$.

Now (2.5.1) for $k \in \mathbb{N}$, $i=v$ follows from (2.5.4) by the induction hypothesis. $\square$
2.6. REMARK. It is easily verified that for $A \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x], d g A \geq k$ we have

$$
\operatorname{dg} \frac{\psi_{k}(A)}{F_{k}}=(\operatorname{dg} A-k) q^{k} .
$$

2.7. REMARK. The polynomial $\frac{\psi_{k}}{F_{k}}$ bears some resemblance to the polynomial $\binom{z}{k}=\frac{z(z-1) \ldots(z-k+1)}{k!}$ in the real case; apart from theorem 2.5 we mention relation (2.5.4) and the relation

$$
\frac{\psi_{k}\left(x^{m}\right)}{F_{k}}=\frac{\psi_{k}\left(x^{m}\right)}{\psi_{k}\left(x^{k}\right)}=\prod_{d g E<k} \frac{x^{m}-E}{x^{k}-E} .
$$

2.8. DEFINITION. The Carlitz- $\psi$-function $\psi: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$ is defined by

$$
\psi(t):=\sum_{j=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{j} \frac{t^{q^{j}}}{F_{j}}
$$

(Note that in view of $d g F_{j}=j q^{j}$, the sequence converges for every $t \in \Phi$.

Let $u \in \Phi$ be a solution of the equation
(2.8.1) $\quad t^{q-1}=x^{q}-x$.

This number $u$ will be fixed in the sequel.

For $c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$ we have $c^{q-1}=1$, hence $c u$ is also a solution of the equation above. Since (2.8.1) has exactly q-1 solutions, the complete set solutions of (2.8.1) is given by $\left\{c u \mid c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}\right\}$. Furthermore

$$
\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{cu}=\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{u}=\frac{\mathrm{q}}{\mathrm{q}-1}
$$

2.9. LEMMA. The sequence $\left\{\frac{\mathrm{u}^{\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{k}}}}{\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right\}_{\mathrm{k} \in \mathbb{N}^{0}}$ is convergent in $\Phi$.

PROOF. From the definition of $u$ and remark 2.2 it follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{u^{q^{k+1}}}{L_{k+1}}-\frac{u^{q^{k}}}{L_{k}} & =\frac{u^{q^{k}}}{L_{k}}\left(\frac{\left(x^{q}-x\right)^{q^{k}}}{x q^{k+1}-x}-1\right) \\
& =-\frac{u^{q^{k}}}{L_{k}}\left(\frac{x^{q^{k}}-x}{x q^{k+1}-x}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and that

$$
\text { (2.9.1) } \quad d g \frac{u^{q^{k}}}{L_{k}}=\frac{q}{q-1}
$$

Hence for arbitrary $j \in \mathbb{N}$ we have

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(\frac{u^{q^{k+j}}}{L_{k+j}}-\frac{u^{q^{k}}}{L_{k}}\right) \leq \max _{0 \leq \nu<j} \operatorname{dg}\left(\frac{u^{q^{k+\nu+1}}}{L_{k+\nu+1}}-\frac{u^{q^{k+\nu}}}{L_{k+\nu}}\right)=\frac{q}{q-1}-q^{k}(q-1)
$$

So the sequence is a Cauchy-sequence. Since $\Phi$ is complete, it is convergent. $\square$
2.10. DEFINITION. The element $\xi \in \Phi$ is defined by
(2.10.1) $\quad \xi:=\lim _{\mathrm{k} \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\mathrm{u}^{\mathrm{q}}}{\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{k}}}$.

Note that it follows from (2.9.1) that $d g \xi=\frac{q}{q-1}$.
2.11. THEOREM. The function $\psi$ has the following properties:
(a) for every $t, v \in \Phi$

$$
\psi(t+v)=\psi(t)+\psi(v),
$$

(b) for every $t \in \Phi, c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}$

$$
\psi(c t)=c \psi(t),
$$

(c) for every $t \in \Phi$

$$
\psi(x t)=x \psi(t)-\psi^{q}(t),
$$

(d) for every $t \in \Phi$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { very } t \in \Phi \\
& \psi(\xi t)=\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty}(-1)^{k} u\left(x^{q}-x\right)^{\frac{q^{k}-1}{q-1}} \frac{\psi_{k}(t)}{F_{k}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

PROOF. The properties (a) and (b) follow immediately from the definition of $\psi$.
(c) From definition 2.8 and remark 2.2a we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
x \psi(t)-\psi^{q}(t) & =\sum_{j=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{j} \frac{x t^{q^{j}}}{F_{j}}-\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{j-1} \frac{t^{q^{j}}\left(x^{q^{j}}-x\right)}{F_{j}} \\
& =x t+\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{j} \frac{t^{q^{j}} x^{q^{j}}}{F_{j}}=\psi(x t) .
\end{aligned}
$$

(d) Let $t \in \Phi, t$ fixed. From the definitions 2.8 and 2.10 and property 2.11a it follows that for every $N \in \mathbb{N}$ there exists a $k_{0} \in \mathbb{N}, k_{0}=k_{0}(N, t)$, such that
(2.11.1) $\operatorname{dg}\left(\psi(t \xi)-\psi\left(t \frac{u^{q^{k}}}{L_{k}}\right)\right)<-N, k>k_{0}$.

We write

$$
\psi\left(t \frac{u^{q^{k}}}{L_{k}}\right)=s_{1}(t)+s_{2}(t)
$$

where
and

$$
S_{1}(t):=\sum_{j=0}^{k} \frac{(-1)^{j}}{F_{j}} t^{q^{j}} \frac{u^{q^{k+j}}}{L_{k}^{q^{j}}}
$$

$$
S_{2}(t):=\sum_{j=k+1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{j}}{F_{j}} t^{q^{j}} \frac{u^{q^{k+j}}}{L_{k}^{q^{j}}}
$$

From (2.8.1) it follows that

$$
u^{q^{j+k}}=u\left(x^{q}-x\right)^{\frac{q^{j+k}-1}{q-1}}
$$

Therefore by (2.4.1) we get
(2.11.2) $\quad S_{1}(t)-(-1)^{k} u\left(x^{q}-x\right)^{\frac{q^{k}-1}{q-1}} \frac{\psi_{k}(t)}{F_{k}}=\sum_{j=0}^{k} \frac{(-1)^{j}}{F_{j}} u t^{q^{j}} \alpha_{k j}$,
where

$$
\alpha_{k j}:=\frac{\left(x^{q}-x\right)^{\frac{q^{j+k}-1}{q-1}}}{L_{k}^{q^{j}}}-\frac{\left(x^{q}-x\right)^{\frac{q^{k}-1}{q-1}}}{L_{k-j}^{q^{j}}}, \quad j=0,1, \ldots, k
$$

Note that $\alpha_{k 0}=0$. For $j \geq 1$ we have from remark 2.2

$$
\alpha_{k j}=\frac{\left(x^{q}-x\right)^{\frac{q^{k}-1}{q-1}}}{L_{k}^{q^{j}}}\left\{\prod_{v=0}^{j-1}\left(1-\frac{x^{q^{k+v}}-x^{q^{j}}}{x^{q^{k+v+1}-x^{j}}}\right)-1\right\}
$$

Hence for $j=1,2, \ldots, k$ we have from remark 2.2

$$
\operatorname{dg} \alpha_{k j} \leq \frac{q^{k}-1}{q-1} \cdot q-\frac{q^{j+1}}{q-1}\left(q^{k-j}-1\right)+q^{k}(1-q)
$$

Therefore

$$
\text { (2.11.3) } \begin{aligned}
d g\left(\sum_{j=0}^{k} \frac{(-1)^{j}}{F_{j}} u t^{q^{j}} \alpha_{k j}\right) & \leq \max _{0 \leq j \leq k}\left(q^{j}\left(d g t+\frac{q}{q-1}-j\right)+q^{k}(1-q)\right) \\
& \leq q^{[d g t]+2}+q^{k}(1-q)
\end{aligned}
$$

From (2.11.2) and (2.11.3) we conclude that for $k$ large enough
1.14
(2.11.4) $\quad \operatorname{dg}\left(S_{1}(t)-(-1)^{k}{ }_{\left.u\left(x^{q}-X\right)^{\frac{q^{k}-1}{q-1}} \frac{\psi_{k}(t)}{F_{k}}\right)<-N . . . ~ . ~ . ~}^{\text {. }}\right.$

From remark 2.2 we get for $k>[d g t]+2$

$$
\begin{aligned}
d g S_{2}(t) & \leq \max _{j \geq k+1} q^{j}\left(d g t-j+q^{k} d g u-d g L_{k}\right) \\
& =\max _{j \geq k+1} q^{j}\left(d g t-j+\frac{q}{q-1}\right)=q^{k+1}\left(d g t-k+\frac{1}{q-1}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence for $k$ large enough

$$
(2.11 .5) \quad \mathrm{dg} \mathrm{~S}_{2}(\mathrm{t})<-\mathrm{N}
$$

Now it follows from (2.11.1), (2.11.4) and (2.11.5) that for $k$ large enough
2.12. THEOREM. The set of zeros of $\psi$ is given by

$$
\left\{\mathrm{E} \xi \mid \mathrm{E} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{x}]\right\}
$$

PROOF. From property 2.11 d and definition 2.3 it follows that $\psi(E \xi)=0$ for all $E \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}]$.

Now let $\alpha$ be a zero of $\psi, \alpha \neq 0$. Let $k_{1} \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ be such that

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
k_{1} \leq d g \alpha \xi^{-1}<k_{1}+1 & \text { if dg } \alpha \xi^{-1} \geq 0, \\
k_{1}=0 & \text { if dg } \alpha \xi^{-1}<0 .
\end{array}
$$

It follows from definition 2.3 that for $k>k_{1}$
(2.12.1)

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{dg} \psi_{k}\left(\alpha \xi^{-1}\right) & =\sum_{d g E<k_{1}} d g\left(\alpha \xi^{-1}-E\right)+\sum_{k_{1} \leq d g E<k} d g\left(\alpha \xi^{-1}-E\right) \\
& =c+(k-1) q^{k}-\frac{q^{k}}{q-1}+\sum_{d g E=k_{1}} d g\left(\alpha \xi^{-1}-E\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
c:=\left\{d g\left(\alpha \xi^{-1}\right)-k_{1} q+\frac{q}{q-1}\right\} q^{k_{1}}
$$

Let $N \in \mathbb{N}$. According to property $2.11 d$ and the assumption that $\alpha$ is a zero of $\psi$ there exists a $k_{0} \in \mathbb{N}, k_{0}=k_{0}(N)$, such that

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(u\left(x^{q}-x\right)^{\frac{q^{k}-1}{q-1}} \frac{\psi_{k}\left(\alpha \xi^{-1}\right)}{F_{k}}\right)<-N, \quad k>k_{0}
$$

Hence for $k>k_{0}$
(2.12.2) $d g \psi_{k}\left(\alpha \xi^{-1}\right)<(k-1) q^{k}-\frac{q^{k}}{q-1}-N$.

The relations (2.11.1) and (2.11.2) give

$$
\sum_{\operatorname{dgE}=\mathrm{k}_{1}} \mathrm{dg}\left(\alpha \xi^{-1}-E\right)<-c-N
$$

Hence

$$
\sum_{\operatorname{dgE}=\mathrm{k}_{1}} \operatorname{dg}\left(\alpha \xi^{-1}-E\right)=-\infty
$$

Thus there is an $E \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ such that $\alpha \xi^{-1}=E$.
2.13. THEOREM. The function $\psi$ has the following property: for every $M \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$
(2.13.1) $\psi(M t)=\sum_{j=0}^{d g M}(-1)^{j} \frac{\psi_{j}(M)}{F_{j}} \psi^{q^{j}}(t)$.

PROOF. For $M=1$ the relation is trivial. Suppose (2.13.1) is correct for $M=1, X, \ldots, x^{m-1}$. Then from property $2.11 c$ and the induction hypothesis we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \psi\left(x^{m} t\right)= x \sum_{j=0}^{m-1}(-1)^{j} \frac{\psi_{j}\left(x^{m-1}\right)}{F_{j}} \psi^{q^{j}}(t)-\sum_{j=1}^{m}(-1)^{j-1} \frac{\psi_{j-1}^{q}\left(x^{m-1}\right)}{F_{j-1}^{q}} \psi^{q^{j}}(t) \\
&= x \cdot x^{m-1} \psi(t) \\
&+\sum_{j=1}^{m}(-1)^{j}\left(x \frac{\psi_{j}\left(x^{m-1}\right)}{F_{j}}+\frac{\psi_{j-1}^{q}\left(x^{m-1}\right)}{F_{j-1}^{q}}\right) \psi^{q^{j}}(t)+ \\
&-(-1)^{m_{x}} x \frac{\psi_{m}\left(x^{m-1}\right)}{F_{m}} \psi^{q^{m}}(t)
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence by (2.5.4) and (2.5.3) we have
1.16

$$
\psi\left(x^{m} t\right)=x^{m} \psi(t)+\sum_{j=1}^{m}(-1)^{j} \frac{\psi_{j}\left(x^{m}\right)}{F_{j}} \psi^{q^{j}}(t),
$$

which gives, with (2.5.2),

$$
\psi\left(x^{m} t\right)=\sum_{j=0}^{m}(-1)^{j} \frac{\psi_{j}\left(x^{m}\right)}{F_{j}} \psi^{q^{j}}(t) .
$$

In view of (2.4.2), (2.4.3) and theorem 2.11a,b formula (2.13.1) follows now for arbitrary $M \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{x}]$.
2.14. THEOREM. The function $\psi$ defines a bijection from

$$
v=\left\{t \in \Phi \left\lvert\, d g t<\frac{q}{q-1}\right.\right\}
$$

onto itself.
2.15. DEFINITION. The function $\lambda: \mathrm{V} \rightarrow \mathrm{V}$ is defined as the inverse of $\psi \mid \mathrm{V}$.
2.16. THEOREM. For $t \in V$ we have

$$
\lambda(t)=\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^{q^{j}}}{L_{j}} .
$$

## Proof of the theorems 2.14 and 2.16

(i) Let $t \in V$. From the definition of $\psi$ it follows that

$$
d g \psi(t) \leq \max _{k \geq 0} q^{k}(d g t-k)<\max _{k \geq 0} q^{k}\left(\frac{q}{q-1}-k\right)=\frac{q}{q-1},
$$

which means $\psi(t) \in \mathrm{V}$.
(ii) Suppose $t_{1}, t_{2} \in V$ and $\psi\left(t_{1}\right)=\psi\left(t_{2}\right)$. Then in view of theorem 2.12 there exists an $E \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{x}]$ such that

$$
t_{1}-t_{2}=E \xi
$$

By the assumption $t_{1}, t_{2} \in V$ we have

$$
d g\left(t_{1}-t_{2}\right)<\frac{q}{q-1} .
$$

On the other hand

$$
d g\left(t_{1}-t_{2}\right)=d g E+d g \xi=d g E+\frac{q}{q-1}
$$

Therefore $E=0$ and $t_{1}=t_{2}$. Hence $\psi$ is injective on $V$.
(iii) Finally we have to prove that for every $\alpha \in \mathrm{V}$ there exists a $\beta \in \mathrm{V}$ such that $\psi(\beta)=\alpha$.

Let $\alpha \in \mathrm{V}$. Since $\psi(0)=0$ we may suppose that $\alpha \neq 0$. Consider the series

$$
\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha^{q^{n}}}{L_{n}}
$$

Since $\alpha \in \mathbb{V} \backslash\{0\}$ there exists an $\varepsilon \in \mathbb{R}, \varepsilon>0$ such that

$$
\operatorname{dg} \alpha=\frac{q}{q-1}-\varepsilon
$$

Now

$$
d g \frac{\alpha^{q^{n}}}{L_{n}}=\frac{q^{n+1}}{q-1}-\varepsilon q^{n}-q \cdot \frac{q^{n}-1}{q-1}=\frac{q}{q-1}-\varepsilon q^{n}
$$

This shows that the general term goes to zero, hence the series is convergent. Let $\beta$ be its sum. Clearly, $\beta \in V$. We shall prove that $\psi(\beta)=\alpha$.

Define

$$
\beta_{n}:=\sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{\alpha^{q^{k}}}{L_{k}}
$$

Remark that

$$
d g\left(\beta-\beta_{n}\right)=\frac{q}{q-1}-\varepsilon q^{n+1}
$$

and that

$$
\psi(\beta)=\psi\left(\beta_{n}\right)+\psi\left(\beta-\beta_{n}\right), \quad n \in \mathbb{N}
$$

## Furthermore

$$
\begin{aligned}
\psi\left(\beta_{n}\right) & =\sum_{k=0}^{n} \psi\left(\frac{\alpha^{q^{k}}}{L_{k}}\right)=\sum_{k=0}^{n} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{j}}{F_{j}} \frac{\alpha^{q^{k+j}}}{L_{k}^{q^{j}}}= \\
& =\sum_{\nu=0}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^{\min (n, \nu)} \frac{(-1)^{\nu-k}}{F_{\nu-k}^{L q_{k}}} \alpha q^{\nu-k}
\end{aligned}
$$

1.18

Hence by theorem 2.4 it follows that

$$
\psi\left(\beta_{n}\right)=\sum_{\nu=0}^{n}(-1)^{\nu} \frac{\psi_{\nu}(1)}{F_{\nu}} \alpha^{\nu}+\gamma_{n},
$$

where

$$
\gamma_{n}:=\sum_{\nu=n+1}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{(-1)^{\nu-k}}{F_{\nu-k} L_{k}^{q^{\nu-k}}} \alpha^{q^{\nu}} .
$$

Since $\psi_{\nu}(1)=0$ for $v \geq 1$, we have

$$
\psi\left(\beta_{n}\right)=\alpha+\gamma_{n}, \quad n=1,2, \ldots
$$

and therefore

$$
\psi(\beta)-\alpha=\psi\left(\beta-\beta_{n}\right)+\gamma_{n}, \quad n=1,2, \ldots .
$$

Now we estimate $d g \gamma_{n}$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{dg} \gamma_{n} & \leq \max _{v \geq n+1}\left[\max _{0 \leq k \leq n}\left(q^{\nu} d g \alpha-(v-k) q^{v-k}-q^{v-k} \cdot q \cdot \frac{q^{k}-1}{q-1}\right)\right] \\
& =\max _{v \geq n+1}\left[q^{\nu}\left(\frac{q}{q-1}-\varepsilon\right)-q^{\nu-n}\left(v-n+q \cdot \frac{q^{n}-1}{q-1}\right)\right] \\
& =-\varepsilon q^{n+1}+\frac{q}{q-1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have

$$
\operatorname{dg}(\psi(\beta)-\alpha) \leq \max \left(\operatorname{dg} \psi\left(\beta-\beta_{n}\right), d g \gamma_{n}\right) \leq \frac{q}{q-1}-\varepsilon q^{n+1}
$$

which means

$$
\operatorname{dg}(\psi(\beta)-\alpha)=-\infty
$$

i.e. $\psi(\beta)=\alpha . \quad \square$

REMARK. The function $\lambda$ was already introduced by L. CARLITZ (1935).
2.17. THEOREM. The function $\psi: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$ is surjective.

PROOF. Let. $v \in \Phi$. If $d g v<\frac{q}{q-1}$ it follows from theorem 2.14 that $v$ is in the range of $\psi$. The proof proceeds by induction on $d g v$.

Let $v \in \Phi, d g v \geq \frac{q}{q-1}$ and let $m \in \mathbb{I N}$ be defined by

$$
m+\frac{1}{q-1} \leq d g v<m+\frac{q}{q-1}
$$

Suppose for all $t \in \Phi$ with $d g t<m+\frac{1}{q-1}$ there exists a $t^{*} \epsilon \Phi$ such that

$$
\psi\left(t^{*}\right)=t .
$$

Since $\Phi$ is algebraically closed, $\Phi$ contains every solution of the equation in $t$
(2.17.1) $\quad x t-t^{q}=v$.

For a solution $t$ of (2.17.1) we have

$$
d g t \leq d g v-1
$$

Therefore

$$
\mathrm{dg} t<m+\frac{1}{q-1}
$$

and according to the induction hypothesis there exists a $t^{*} \epsilon \Phi$ with $\psi\left(t^{*}\right)=t$. Put

$$
v^{*}:=X t^{*}
$$

then according to theorem 2.11c

$$
\psi\left(v^{*}\right)=\psi\left(x t^{*}\right)=x \psi\left(t^{*}\right)-\psi^{q}\left(t^{*}\right)=x t-t^{q}=v
$$

REMARK. It follows from work of D.R. HAYES (1974) and H.W. LENSTRA Jr. (private communication) that the Carlitz- $\psi$-function can be compared with the exponential function in the classical case.
3. LINEAR FUNCTIONS AND THE $\triangle$-OPERATOR
3.1. DEFINITION. Let $\mathrm{v} \subset \Phi$ be such that

$$
t, v \in V \Rightarrow t+v \in v
$$

and

$$
t \in \mathrm{~V}, \mathrm{c} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}} \Rightarrow \mathrm{ct} \in \mathrm{~V}
$$

A function $f: V \rightarrow \Phi$ is called linear on $V$ if
(3.1.1) $f(t+v)=f(t)+f(v), \quad t, v \in V$
and
(3.1.2) $f(c t)=c f(t), \quad t \in V, c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}$.

EXAMPLES. It follows from the theorems 2.4, 2.11 and 2.16 that the functions $\psi$ and $\psi_{k}$ are linear on $\Phi$ and that the function $\lambda$ is linear on $\mathrm{v}=\left\{\mathrm{t} \in \Phi \left\lvert\, \mathrm{dg} \mathrm{t}<\frac{\mathrm{q}}{\mathrm{q}-1}\right.\right\}$.
3.2. THEOREM. Let $\left\{a_{n}\right\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$ be a sequence of elements of $\Phi$. Put

$$
R:=-\underset{n \rightarrow \infty}{\lim \sup } \frac{d g a_{n}}{n} .
$$

Then the series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n} t^{n}$ converges for all $t \in \Phi$ with $d g t<R$ and diverges for all $t \in \Phi$ with $d g t>R$.

PROOF. Assume $R \in \mathbb{R}$.
(i) Let $t \in \Phi$ be such that $d g t<R$. Choose $\rho \in \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$
-R<\rho<-d g t .
$$

There exists an $n_{0} \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for $n>n_{0}$

$$
\frac{d g a_{n}}{n}<\rho
$$

Hence for $n>n_{0}$

$$
d g\left(a_{n} t^{n}\right)=d g a_{n}+n d g t<n(\rho+d g t)
$$

Since from the choice of $\rho$ we know that $\rho+d g t<0$, we may conclude that

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} d g\left(a_{n} t^{n}\right)=-\infty
$$

This suffices to prove that $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n} t^{n}$ converges.
(ii) Let $t \in \Phi$ be such that $d g t>R$ and let $\rho \in \mathbb{R}$ be such that
$-d g t<\rho<-R$. Then there exists an increasing sequence $\left\{n_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$ such that

$$
\frac{d g a_{n_{k}}}{n_{k}}>\rho, \quad k \geq 1
$$

and hence

$$
d g\left(a_{n_{k}} t^{n_{k}}\right)>n_{k}(\rho+d g t)>0
$$

This means that $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n} t^{n}$ diverges.
The cases $R= \pm \infty$ are left to the reader.

### 3.3. REMARKS.

a) A series of the form $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n} t^{n}, a_{n} \epsilon \Phi$ is called a power series and $R$ its radius of convergence.
b) Since $\Phi$ is a complete metric space, the notions of limit, continuity, differentiability and derivative of a function are defined in the obvious way. See J. DIEUDONNE (1969), 3.11; 3.13; 8.1.
c) If the function $f: U \rightarrow \Phi(U \subset \Phi)$ has a power series expansion $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n} t^{n}$ with radius of convergence $R>-\infty$, then this expansion is unique.
3.4. THEOREM. Let the function $f$ be defined by the power series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n} t^{n}$, $a_{n} \in \Phi$ with radius of convergence $R$. Then $f$ is differentiable on $\{t \in \Phi \mid d g t<R\}$ and

$$
f^{\prime}(t)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n a_{n} t^{n-1}
$$

where na ${ }_{n}:=\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{n}$. The power series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n a_{n} t^{n-1}$ has radius of convergence $\geq \mathrm{R}$.

PROOF. The proof is left to the reader.
3.5. THEOREM. Let $f$ be defined by $f(t):=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n} t^{n}, a_{n} \in \Phi$ with radius of convergence $R>-\infty$. If $f$ is linear on $\{t \in \Phi \mid d g t<R\}$, then

$$
f(t)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a{ }_{q} k^{t^{q^{k}}}
$$

PROOF. Denote $V=\{t \in \Phi \mid d g t<R\}$. From relation (3.1.2) it follows that $a_{0}=0$. Using relation (3.1.1) we conclude from the definition of differentiability that $f^{\prime}(t)=a_{1}$ on $V$. Therefore it follows from theorem 3.4 and remark 3.3c that

$$
n a_{n}=0, \quad n=2,3, \ldots
$$

Hence

$$
a_{n}=0, \quad p \ngtr n,
$$

i.e.

$$
f(t)=a_{1} t+\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} a_{j p} t^{j p}
$$

So we have proved the relation
(3.5.1) $f(t)=a_{1} t+a_{p} t^{p}+\ldots+a_{p^{k-1}} t^{p^{k-1}}+\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} a a_{j p^{k}} t^{j p^{k}}, \quad \kappa \in \mathbb{N}$
for $k=1$.
Suppose (3.5.1) is correct for $k=1,2, \ldots, k$. Define

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{k}}:=\left\{\mathrm{t} \in \mathrm{~V} \mid \mathrm{p}^{-\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{dgt}<\mathrm{R}\right\}
$$

and

$$
g_{k}(t):=\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} a{ }_{j p} k^{t^{j}}, \quad t \in v_{k}
$$

Let $t_{1}, t_{2} \in V_{k}$ and let $v_{1}$ resp. $v_{2}$ be solutions of

$$
t^{p^{k}}-t_{1}=0, \quad t^{p^{k}}-t_{2}=0
$$

respectively. Then

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right) \leq p^{-k} \max \left(d g t_{1}, d g t_{2}\right)<R
$$

and using (3.1.1) we find

$$
\begin{aligned}
g_{k}\left(t_{1}+t_{2}\right) & =\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} a_{j p k}\left(v_{1}^{p^{k}}+v_{2}^{p^{k}}\right)=\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} a_{j p^{k}}\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right)^{j p^{k}} \\
& =f\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right)-a_{1}\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right)-a_{p}\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right)^{p}-\ldots-a_{p^{k-1}}\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right)^{p^{k-1}} \\
& =f\left(v_{1}\right)+f\left(v_{2}\right)-a_{1} v_{1}-a_{2} v_{2}-\ldots-a_{p k-1} v_{1}^{p_{1}^{k-1}}-a p_{p-1} v_{2}^{p-1} \\
& =g_{k}\left(t_{1}\right)+g_{k}\left(t_{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore $g_{k}^{\prime}(t)=a_{p}$ on $V_{k}$. On the other hand it follows from theorem 3.4 that

$$
g_{k}^{\prime}(t)=\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} j a p_{j p} t^{j-1}
$$

hence

$$
a_{j p}=0, \quad p \nmid j
$$

Thus

$$
f(t)=a_{1} t+a_{p} t^{p}+\ldots+a_{p} k^{t^{p}}+\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} a_{j p}{ }_{j+1} t^{j p^{k+1}}
$$

So we have showed by induction that

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(t)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a{ }_{p} k^{t^{p^{k}}} \tag{3.5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $q=p$ we have proved our theorem.
From relations (3.1.2) and (3.5.1) we conclude that
(3.5.2)

$$
\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{p}} \mathrm{c}\left(\mathrm{c}^{\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{k}}-1}-1\right)=0, \quad \mathrm{k} \in \mathbb{N}^{0}, \mathrm{c} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}
$$

Recall that $q=p^{n}(n \in \mathbb{N})$. Hence for $k \in \mathbb{N}$ there are $\ell \in \mathbb{N}^{0}, m \in \mathbb{N}$ such that

$$
\mathrm{k}=\ln +\mathrm{m}, \quad 1 \leq \mathrm{m} \leq \mathrm{n} .
$$

Using relations (0.7.1) and (0.7.2), relation (3.5.2) gives

$$
\begin{array}{r}
a p^{k}{ }^{c} \prod_{d \in \mathbb{F}_{p^{m}}^{*}}(c-d)=a_{p^{k}} c\left(c^{p^{m}-1}-1\right)=a_{p^{k}} c\left(c^{p^{k}-1}-1\right)=0, \\
k \in \mathbb{N}, c \in \mathbb{F}_{q} .
\end{array}
$$

Therefore
(3.5.3) either $c \in \mathbb{F}_{p^{m}}$ or ${ }_{a_{p}}=0, \quad k \in \mathbb{N}$.

If $1 \leq m<n$, then $\mathbb{F}_{q} \backslash \mathbb{F}_{p^{m}} \neq \varnothing$. Hence we conclude from (3.5.2) and (3.5.3) that $a_{p^{k}}=0$ unless $p^{q}$ is ${ }^{p^{m}}$ a power of $q$. $\quad \square$
3.6. DEFINITION. Let $V(r) \subset \Phi$ denote the set $\{t \mid d g t<r\}$ and let
$f: V(r) \rightarrow \Phi$. Then we define the functions $\Delta_{n} f: V(r-n) \rightarrow \Phi, n=0,1,2, \ldots$ by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Delta_{0} f:=f, \\
& \Delta_{1} f(t):=\Delta f(t):=f(x t)-x f(t), \\
& \vdots \\
& \Delta_{n} f(t):=\Delta_{n-1} f(x t)-x^{q^{n-1}} \Delta_{n-1} f(t) .
\end{aligned}
$$

For $\mathrm{n}=0,1,2, \ldots$ the operators $\Delta_{\mathrm{n}}$ are defined above by their action on functions $f: V(r) \rightarrow \Phi$.

Note that $\Delta(\Delta f)$ need not be equal to $\Delta_{2} f$, etc.
3.7. Theorem. When $f$ is linear on $V(r)$, so is $\Delta_{n} f$ on $V(r-n), n \in \mathbb{N}$.

PROOF. Trivial.
3.8. THEOREM. The following relations hold:
(3.8.1) $\quad \Delta_{n} \frac{\mathrm{X}^{\mathrm{h}^{h}} \mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{q}}}{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}}}=\frac{\mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{q}^{h}} \mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{q}}}{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}-\mathrm{n}}}, \quad \mathrm{n}=0,1, \ldots, k ; \mathrm{h} \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$,

$$
\Delta_{n} \frac{\mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{h}}} \mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{q}}}{\mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{k}}}=0, \quad \mathrm{n}>\mathrm{k} ; \mathrm{h} \in \mathbf{N}^{0}
$$

(3.8.2) $\quad \Delta_{n} \psi(t)=(-1)^{n^{n} \psi^{n}}(t), \quad n=0,1,2, \ldots$
and
(3.8.3) $\quad \Delta_{n} \frac{\psi_{k}(t)}{F_{k}}=\left(\frac{\psi_{k-n}(t)}{F_{k-n}}\right)^{q^{n}}, \quad n=0,1, \ldots, k$,

$$
\Delta_{\mathrm{n}} \frac{\psi_{\mathrm{k}}(\mathrm{t})}{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}}}=0, \quad \mathrm{n}>\mathrm{k}
$$

PROOF. The proof proceeds by induction on $n$ and uses relation 2.2 a , theorem 2.11c and relation (2.4.4) respectively.

Note: The relations (3.8.2) and (3.8.3) were already given by L. CARLITZ (1935) in $\S 5$ and $\S 3$ respectively.
3.9. LEMMA. Let $g \in \Phi[t]$ be a linear polynomial of degree $q^{n}$. Then for every $t, v \in \Phi$ we have
(3.9.1) $g(t v)=\sum_{j=0}^{n} \frac{\psi_{j}(v)}{F_{j}} \Delta_{j} g(t)$.

PROOF. (See also L. CARLITZ (1935), th.3.1).
For $\mathrm{n}=0$ the assertion is evident.
Suppose (3.9.1) has been proved for $n=0,1, \ldots, N-1$. We shall prove
it for $n=N$. By linearity, $g(t)$ is necessarily of the form

$$
g(t)=\sum_{k=0}^{N} a_{k} \frac{t^{q^{k}}}{F_{k}}
$$

From definition 3.6 and relation (3.8.1) we obtain
(3.9.2) $\quad \Delta_{j} g(t)=\sum_{k=j}^{N} a_{k} \frac{t^{q^{k}}}{F_{k-j}^{j}}, \quad j=0,1, \ldots, N$.

Hence from the induction hypothesis we have for $t, v \in \Phi$

$$
\begin{aligned}
g(t v) & =\sum_{j=0}^{N-1} \frac{\psi_{j}(v)}{F_{j}}\left(\Delta_{j} g(t)-a_{N} \frac{t^{q^{N}}}{F_{N} q^{j}}\right)+a_{N} \frac{t^{q^{N}} v^{q^{N}}}{F_{N N}} \\
& =\sum_{j=0}^{N} \frac{\psi_{j}(v)}{F_{j}} \Delta_{j} g(t)+a_{N} t^{q^{N}}\left(\frac{v^{q^{N}}}{F_{N}}-\sum_{j=0}^{N} \frac{\psi_{j}(v)}{F_{j} F_{N-j}^{j}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

It remains to prove that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{v^{q^{N}}}{F_{N}}=\sum_{j=0}^{N} \frac{\psi_{j}(v)}{F_{j} F_{N-j} q^{j}}, \quad v \in \Phi \tag{3.9.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since the polynomial $\psi_{j} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X][v]$ is linear on $\Phi$ of degree $q^{j}$ for $j=0,1, \ldots, N$, we can put $\mathrm{v}^{\mathrm{q}} / \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{N}}^{\mathrm{q}}$ in the form

$$
\frac{v^{q^{N}}}{F_{N}}=\sum_{j=0}^{N} b_{j} \frac{\psi_{j}(v)}{F_{j}}
$$

From theorem 3.8 we obtain for $i=0,1, \ldots, N$
(3.9.4) $\Delta_{i}\left(\frac{v^{q^{N}}}{F_{N}}\right)=\sum_{j=i}^{N} b_{j}\left(\frac{\psi_{j-i}^{(v)}}{F_{j-i}}\right)^{q^{i}}$.

On the other hand

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta_{i}\left(\frac{v^{q^{N}}}{F_{N}}\right)=\frac{v^{q^{N}}}{F^{F q^{i}}}, \quad i=0,1, \ldots, N \tag{3.9.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $\psi_{k}(1)=0$ for $k>0$ and $\psi_{0}(1)=1$, the relations (3.9.4) and (3.9.5) for $v=1$ imply

$$
b_{i}=\frac{1}{\mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{N}-i}^{q^{i}}}, \quad i=0,1, \ldots, N
$$

Hence (3.9.3) is proved and the induction step is completed. $\square$
3.10. THEOREM. (Expansion Formula). Let $f: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$ be a linear function defined by a power series with radius of convergence R:

$$
f(t)=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n} t^{q^{n}}, \quad a_{n} \in \Phi
$$

Let $M \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}]$ with $\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{M}=\mathrm{m}$. Then for every $\mathrm{t} \in \Phi$ with $\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{t}+\mathrm{m}<\mathrm{R}$ we have
(3.10.1) $f(M t)=\sum_{j=0}^{m} \frac{\psi_{j}(M)}{F_{j}} \Delta_{j} f(t)$.

PROOF. Consider for $n>m$ the linear polynomials

$$
f_{n}(t)=\sum_{k=0}^{n} a_{k} t^{q^{k}}
$$

For $t \in \Phi$ with $d g t<R$ we have

$$
f(t)=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} f_{n}(t)
$$

For $t \in \Phi$ with dg $t+m<R$ we have

$$
\Delta_{j} f(t)=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \Delta_{j} f_{n}(t), \quad j=1,2, \ldots, m
$$

Now using lemma 3.9 with $g=f_{n}$ and $v=M$, we get

$$
f(M t)=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} f_{n}(M t)=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=0}^{m} \frac{\psi_{k}(M)}{F_{k}} \Delta_{k} f_{n}(t)=\sum_{k=0}^{m} \frac{\psi_{k}(M)}{F_{k}} \Delta_{k} f(t)
$$

3.11. COROLLARY (= theorem 2.13). Let $M \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ with $d g M=m$. Then for all $t \in \Phi$

$$
\psi(M t)=\sum_{k=0}^{m}(-1)^{k} \frac{\psi_{k}(M)}{F_{k}} \psi^{q^{k}}(t)
$$

PROOF. Since $\psi$ is an entire linear function (3.10.1) is valid for all $t \in \Phi$. Now the expression for $\psi(M t)$ follows by using theorem 3.8 in (3.10.1).
3.12. LEMMA. Let $\mathrm{f}: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$ be an entire, linear function. Then for every $\mathrm{k} \in \mathbb{N}$
(3.12.1) $\quad \Delta_{k} f^{q}(t)=\left(\Delta_{k} f(t)\right)^{q}+\left(x^{q^{k}}-x\right)\left(\Delta_{k-1} f(t)\right)^{q}$.

PROOF. For $k=1$ we have

$$
\Delta f^{q}(t)=f^{q}(x t)-x f^{q}(t)=(f(x t)-x f(t))^{q}+\left(x^{q}-x\right) f^{q}(t),
$$

which proves (3.12.1) for $k=1$.
Now suppose that (3.12.1) has been proved for $k=1, \ldots, k-1$. Then we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Delta_{k} f^{q}(t) & =\Delta_{k-1} f^{q}(x t)-x^{q^{k-1}} \Delta_{k-1} f^{q}(t) \\
& =\left(\Delta_{k-1} f(x t)\right)^{q}+\left(x^{q^{k-1}}-x\right)\left(\Delta_{k-2} f(x t)\right)^{q}+ \\
& -x^{q^{k-1}}\left\{\left(\Delta_{k-1} f(t)\right)^{q}+\left(x^{q^{k-1}}-x\right)\left(\Delta_{k-2} f(t)\right)^{q}\right\}=
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\left\{\Delta_{k-1} f(x t)-x^{q^{k-1}} \Delta_{k-1} f(t)\right\}^{q}+x^{q^{k}}\left(\Delta_{k-1} f(t)\right)^{q} \\
& +\left(x^{q^{k-1}}-x\right)\left\{\Delta_{K-2} 2^{\left.f(x t)-x^{q^{k-2}} \Delta_{k-2} f(t)\right\}^{q}-x^{q^{k-1}}\left(\Delta_{k-1} f(t)\right)^{q}}\right. \\
& =\left(\Delta_{K} f(t)\right)^{q}+\left(x^{q^{k}}-x\right)\left(\Delta_{K-1} f(t)\right)^{q} .
\end{aligned}
$$

4. the functions $\mathrm{J}_{\mathrm{n}}$

In 1960 L. CARLITZ introduced a class of functions which have formal resemblance with classical cylinder functions.
4.1. DEFINITION. For $n \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ the function $J_{n}: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$ is defined by (4.1.1) $\quad J_{n}(t):=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{k} \frac{t^{q^{n+k}}}{F_{n+k} F_{k}^{q^{n}}}$.

For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we define the function $J_{-n}: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$ by
(4.1.2) $J_{-n}(t):=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{n+k} \frac{t^{q^{k}}}{F_{k} F_{n+k}^{q^{-n}}}$.

REMARK. $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}+\mathrm{k}}^{\mathrm{q}}$ is uniquely determined.
If we put $F_{-n}^{-1}=0, n \in \mathbb{N}$, then for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ the function $J_{n}$ can be defined by formula (4.1.1).
4.2. THEOREM [L. CARLITZ (1960), formulae (5.3), (5.9), (5.13) and (5.14)]. Let $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. The function $J_{n}$ as defined above is an entire, linear function, which has the properties:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left\{J_{-n}(t)\right\}^{q^{n}}=(-1)^{n} J_{n}(t),  \tag{i}\\
& \Delta_{k} J_{n}(t)=J_{n-k}^{q^{k}}(t), \quad k=1,2, \ldots, \tag{ii}
\end{align*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
J_{n+1}(t)-\left(x^{q^{n}}-x\right) J_{n}(t)+J_{n-1}^{q}(t)=0 \tag{iii}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
J_{n}\left(x^{2} t\right)-\left(x^{q^{n}}+x\right) J_{n}(x t)+x^{q^{n}+1} J_{n}(t)=-J_{n}^{q}(t) \tag{iv}
\end{equation*}
$$

PROOF. The formulae can be computed directly from the definition of $J_{n}$, using (1.7.4) and (3.8.1). $\square$
4.3. REMARK. From the definition of $\Delta_{2}$ we see that (iv) can also be written as
(iva)

$$
\Delta_{2} J_{n}(t)-\left(x^{q^{n}}-x^{q}\right) \Delta_{n}(t)+J_{n}^{q}(t)=0
$$

4.4. THEOREM. For all $\mathrm{n} \in \mathbb{N}^{0}, \mathrm{k} \in \mathbb{N}$ we have

$$
\Delta_{k} J_{n}(t)=P_{k}\left(J_{n}(t), \Delta J_{n}(t)\right)
$$

where $P_{k}$ is a linear polynomial in $\mathbb{F}_{q}[X]\left[t_{1}, t_{2}\right]$ of total degree $q^{[k / 2]}$. The valuation of the coefficients of $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{k}}$ is less than $\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{n}+\mathrm{k}-1}$.

PROOF. For $k=1$ the theorem is obvious. For $k=2$ the assertion follows immediately from remark 4.3.

Now suppose that the assertion has been proved for $k=1,2, \ldots, k-1 ; \kappa \geq 3$. Then it follows from theorem $4.2(i i)$ and (iii) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Delta_{K} J_{n}(t) & =J_{n-k}^{q^{\kappa}}(t)=\left(J_{n-\kappa}^{q}(t)\right)^{q^{\kappa-1}} \\
& =\left\{\left(x^{q^{n-\kappa+1}}-x\right) J_{n-\kappa+1}(t)-J_{n-k+2}(t)\right\}^{q^{k-1}} \\
& =\left(x^{\left.q^{n}-x^{q^{k-1}}\right) J_{n-\kappa+1}^{q^{k-1}}(t)-\left(J_{n-\kappa+2}^{q^{k-2}}(t)\right)^{q}}\right. \\
& =\left(x^{q^{n}}-x^{q^{\kappa-1}}\right) \Delta_{\kappa-1} J_{n}(t)-\left(\Delta_{\kappa-2} J_{n}(t)\right)^{q}
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence by the induction hypothesis for $k=\kappa-1$, $\kappa-2$ we have
(4.4.1) $\quad \Delta_{K} J_{n}(t)=\left(x^{q^{n}}-x^{q^{K-1}}\right) P_{K-1}\left(J_{n}(t), \Delta J_{n}(t)\right)-P_{K-2}^{q}\left(J_{n}(t), \Delta J_{n}(t)\right)$
and therefore

$$
\Delta_{K} J_{n}(t)=P_{K}\left(J_{n}(t), \Delta J_{n}(t)\right)
$$

It follows from (4.4.1) and the induction hypothesis that the degree of $P_{K}$ is equal to $q^{[K / 2]}$ and that the valuation of the coefficients of $P_{k}$ is at most $q^{n+\kappa-1}$.

The rest of this section will not be used in the following chapters. The function $J_{n}$ is a solution of the equation

$$
f\left(x^{2} t\right)-\left(x^{q^{n}}+x\right) f(x t)+x^{q^{n}+1} f(t)=-f^{q}(t)
$$

with $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. We are interested in all solutions of this equation which are of the form

$$
f(t)=\sum_{\nu=-h}^{\infty} a_{\nu} t^{q^{\nu}}, \quad h \in \mathbb{Z}, a_{\nu} \in \Phi, a_{-h} \neq 0
$$

It turns out that for $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ there is essentially only one such solution of the equation; see L. CARLITZ (1960). However, the equation above can be slightly generalized. Recall that $q$ is a power of $p$, say $p^{m}$ and that the field $\Phi$ has characteristic $p$. Hence for those $r \in \mathbb{Q}$ such that $r m \in \mathbb{Z}$, the element $\mathrm{X}^{q^{r}} \in \Phi$ is uniquely defined.
4.6. DEFINITION. Let $q=p^{m}$. Let $r \in \mathbb{Q}$ be such that $r m \in \mathbb{Z}$. For $r>-1$ we define the element $F_{r} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}]$ by

$$
F_{r}:= \begin{cases}\prod_{\substack{j \in \mathbb{Z} \\ 0 \leq j<r}}\left(x^{p r}-x^{m j}\right) & \text { if } r>0, \\ 1 & \text { if }-1<r \leq 0\end{cases}
$$

For $r \leq-1$ we put

$$
\frac{1}{F_{r}}:=\prod_{\substack{j \in \mathbb{Z} \\ r \leq j<0}}\left(x^{p^{m r}}-x^{p^{m j}}\right)
$$

4.7. REMARK. For $r \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ definition 4.6 equals definition 2.1 of this thesis; furthermore $F_{r}^{-1}=0$ for $-r \in \mathbb{N}$. For $q, r$ as in definition 4.6 we have
(4.7.1) $\quad F_{r}=\left(x^{p^{m r}}-X\right) F_{r-1}^{p^{m}}$.
4.8. DEFINITION. Let $q=p^{m}$. Let $r \in Q$ be such that $r m \in \mathbb{Z}$. We define the function $J_{r}: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$ by

$$
J_{r}(t):=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{k} \frac{t^{q^{r+k}}}{F_{r+k} F_{k}^{q^{r}}}, \quad t \in \Phi
$$

(The series is convergent for all $\mathrm{t} \in \Phi$. )
4.9. THEOREM. The function $J_{r}$ from definition 4.8 has the properties:

$$
\begin{align*}
& J_{r+1}(t)-\left(x^{q^{r}}-X\right) J_{r}(t)+J_{r-1}^{q}(t)=0,  \tag{i}\\
& J_{r}\left(x^{2} t\right)-\left(x^{q^{r}}+X\right) J_{r}(x t)+x^{q^{r}+1} J_{r}(t)=-J_{r}^{q}(t) .
\end{align*}
$$

PROOF. Analogous to the proof of theorem 4.2. $\square$

## 5. ANALYSIS ON $\Phi$

5.1. DEFINITION. Let $R \in \mathbb{R} U\{+\infty\}$ and $U=\{t \in \Phi \mid d g t<R\}$. A function $f: U \rightarrow \Phi$ is called analytic on $U$ if there exists a power series $\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}$, $a_{i} \in \Phi$ with radius of convergence $\geq R$ such that

$$
f(t)=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}, \quad t \in U
$$

If $R=+\infty$ then $f$ is called an entire function.
5.2. REMARK. Let $f$ be analytic on $U=\{t \in \Phi \mid d g t<R\}$. Suppose that the power series $\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}$, which represents $f$ on $U$, has radius of convergence R. Then $f$ has no analytic continuation outside $U$ in the classical sense, see J. DE GROOT (1942), L.I. WADE (1946). Recently PH. ROBBA (1973) and J. TATE (1971) have given different methods for analytic continuation of functions over a complete non-archimedean valued field. For an exposé in the p-adic case we refer to the book of Y. AMICE (1975).

In the following chapters we shall need some results from the theory of functions $f: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$. Since there are fundamental differences between $\Phi$ and $\mathbb{C}$ ( $\Phi$ has characteristic $p$, the valuation of $\Phi$ is non-archimedean, $\Phi$ is not locally compact), we may also expect great differences between this theory and the classical theory of complex functions of one variable. Surprisingly some fundamental classical theorems have analogues in the theory of functions based on $\Phi$. So we have e.g. a maximum modulus theorem and a product formula for entire functions. (See theorem 5.16 and corollary 5.24 respectively.)

We shall give complete proofs of the theorems needed later on. For a more general treatment we refer to the works of U. GÜNTZER (1966), M. LAZARD (1962) and A.F. MONNA (1970). The first results in non-archimedean analysis are contained in the thesis of $W$. SCHÖBE (1930). For a discussion of SCHNIRELMAN's proof of the maximum-modulus principle we refer to his own work (1938) or to W.W. ADAMS (1966, appendix), who gives an exposition for the p-adic case.
5.3. DEFINITION. Let $\Phi[[t]]$ be the set of formal power series with coefficients in $\Phi$. For each $r \in \mathbb{R}$ the subset $P_{r}$ of $\Phi[[t]]$ is defined as follows. Let $f \in \Phi[[t]], f(t)=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}$. Then $f \in P_{r}$ if and only if
(5.3.1) $\left.\lim _{i \rightarrow \infty}\left(d g a_{i}+i r\right)=-\infty . *\right)$

For such $r$ we put

$$
M_{r}(f):=\max _{i \geq 0}\left(d g a_{i}+i r\right)
$$

Further we define

$$
\|f\|_{r}:=q^{M_{r}(f)}, \quad f \in P_{r} .
$$

5.4. LEMMA. $P_{r}$ is a $\Phi$-Banach space with norm $\|\cdot\|_{r}$.

PROOF. Clearly, $P_{r}$ is a vector space over $\Phi$ and

$$
\|f+g\|_{r} \leq\|f\|_{r}+\|g\|_{r} .
$$

Finally, let $\left\{f_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}, f_{k}(t)=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_{k i} t^{i}$ be a Cauchy sequence in $P_{r}$. Then the proof of the completeness can be given by standard arguments in the following steps:
(i) for each $i, \lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} a_{k i}=: a_{i}$ exists in $\Phi$.
(ii) $f$, defined by $f(t):=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}$ belongs to $P_{r} r$
(iii) $\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} f_{k}=f$ in the norm topology of $P_{r} \cdot \square$
*) This implies that for every $t \in \Phi$ with $d g t=r$ the series $\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}$ converges.
5.5. REMARK. From the proof of lemma 5.4 we see that $\left\{f_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$, $f_{k}(t)=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_{k i} t^{i}$ is a convergent sequence in $P_{r}$ if and only if for every $t \in \Phi$ with $d g t \leq r$ the sequence of elements $\left\{f_{k}(t)\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$ is convergent in $\Phi$.
5.6. REMARK. When $f \in P_{r}$, then the radius of convergence $R$ of $f$ is not smaller than $r$.

When $f \in P_{r}$, then $f \in P_{\rho}$ for all $\rho \leq r$ and for all $\rho \leq r$ we have

$$
\sup _{d g t=\rho} d g f(t) \leq M_{\rho}(f)
$$

If there is only one $i \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ such that

$$
\text { (5.6.1) } \quad d g a_{i}+i \rho=M_{\rho}(f)
$$

then we even have for all $t \in \Phi$ with $d g t=\rho$

$$
\text { (5.6.2) } \quad d g f(t)=M_{\rho}(f)
$$

Those $\rho \leq r$ for which there exists more than one $i \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ such that (5.6.1) is valid, will play a special role in the theory, since they are connected with the occurence and the location of the zeros of $f$.
5.7. DEFINITION. Let $r \in \mathbb{R}, f \in P_{r}, f(t)=\sum_{i=h}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}, a_{h} \neq 0$. If for $\rho \in \mathbb{R}, \rho \leq r$, there exist $i, j \geq h, i \neq j$, such that

$$
d g a_{i}+i \rho=d g a_{j}+j \rho=M_{\rho}(f)
$$

then $\rho$ is called a hooking-radius of f .
5.8. LEMMA. Let $r \in \mathbb{R}, f \in P_{r}, f(t)=\sum_{i=h}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}, a_{h} \neq 0$. The number of hooking-radii of f in $(-\infty, x]$ is finite.

PROOF. Because of (5.3.1) there exists an $n_{0}$ such that
(5.8.1) $\quad i>n_{0} \Rightarrow d g a_{i}+i r<d g a_{h}+h r$.

Hence for all $i>n_{0}$ and $\rho \leq r$
(5.8.2) $\quad d g a_{i}+i \rho<d g a_{h}+h \rho \leq M_{\rho}(f)$.

Since for $i \neq j, h \leq i, j \leq n_{0}$ there is at most one $\rho \leq r$ with $d g a_{i}+i \rho=d g a_{j}+j \rho$, the number of hooking-radii of $f$ in $(-\infty, r]$ is at $\operatorname{most}\binom{\mathrm{n}_{0}-\mathrm{h}+1}{2}$.
5.9. REMARK. In 5.11 we shall introduce a kind of Newton polygon to describe the behaviour of $M_{\rho}(f)$. The hooking-radii will be the angular points of this polygon. Note that because of (5.8.1) the indices $i>n_{0}$ can be neglected in arguments on $M_{\rho}(f)$.
5.10. DEFINITION. Let $r \in \mathbb{R}, f \in P_{r}, f(t)=\sum_{i=h}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}, a_{h} \neq 0$. Let $R_{1}, R_{2}, \ldots, R_{\ell}$ be the (possibly empty) sequence of hooking-radii of $f$ in $(-\infty, r]$ in increasing order. Define

$$
i_{0}:=h
$$

and

$$
i_{k}:=\max _{i \geq h}\left\{i \mid d g a_{i}+i R_{k}=M_{R_{k}}(f)\right\}, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, \ell
$$

5.11. THEOREM. In the notation of definition 5.10 we have
(i)

$$
i_{0}<i_{1}<\ldots<i_{\ell}
$$

(ii) If $\left\{\mathrm{R}_{1}, \mathrm{R}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{R}_{\ell}\right\}=\varnothing$ :
$\max _{i \geq h}\left\{i \mid d g a_{i}+i \rho=M_{\rho}(f)\right\}=\min _{i \geq h}\left\{i \mid d g a_{i}+i \rho=M_{\rho}(f)\right\}=i_{0}$, $-\infty<\rho \leq r$.
(iii) If $\left\{\mathrm{R}_{1}, \mathrm{R}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{R}_{\ell}\right\} \neq \varnothing$ :
$\max _{i \geq h}\left\{i \mid d g a_{i}+i \rho=M_{\rho}(f)\right\}= \begin{cases}i_{0}, & -\infty<\rho<R_{1}, \\ i_{k}, & R_{k} \leq \rho<R_{k+1}, k=1,2, \ldots, \ell-1, \\ i_{\ell^{\prime}} & R_{\ell} \leq \rho \leq r .\end{cases}$
and
$\min _{i \geq h}\left\{i \mid d g a_{i}+i \rho=M_{\rho}(f)\right\}= \begin{cases}i_{0}, & -\infty<\rho \leq R_{1}, \\ i_{k}, & R_{k}<\rho \leq R_{k+1}, k=1,2, \ldots, \ell-1, \\ i^{\prime} \ell^{\prime} & R^{R_{\ell}}<\rho \leq r .\end{cases}$

PROOF. Let $1 \leq k \leq \ell$ and $h \leq i<i_{k}$. Since

$$
d g a_{i}+i R_{k} \leq d g a_{i_{k}}+i_{k} R_{k}
$$

one has for $\rho \in\left(R_{k}, r\right]$
(5.11.1) $d g a_{i}+i \rho<d g a_{i_{k}}+i_{k} \rho \leq M_{\rho}(f)$.

In particular, by $R_{k}<R_{k+1} \leq r$ and for $k=0$ trivially,
(5.11.2) $\min _{i \geq h}\left\{i \mid d g a_{i}+i R_{k+1}=M_{R_{k+1}}(f)\right\} \geq i_{k}, \quad k=0,1,2, \ldots, \ell-1$.

It follows, by the definitions 5.7 and 5.10 , that $i_{k+1}>i_{k}$ for $k=0,1, \ldots, \ell-1$. This proves (i).

By means of continuity arguments it is easily seen that assertion (ii) and the assertions of (iii) for $-\infty<\rho<R_{1}$ and $-\infty<\rho \leq R_{1}$ respectively are obvious.

Now we consider the case that there are one or more hooking-radii. Let $n_{0} \geq h$ be such that (5.8.1) is valid. From the maximality in the definition of $i_{k}$ we see that

$$
\text { (5.11.3) } d g a_{i_{k}}+i_{k} \rho>\max _{i_{k}<i \leq n_{0}}\left(d g a_{i}+i \rho\right), \rho=R_{k}, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, \ell .
$$

Let $1 \leq k \leq \ell$ and suppose that the inequality in (5.11.3) holds for all $\rho \in\left(R_{k}, r\right]$. Then it follows from (5.8.2) that

$$
d g a_{i_{k}}+i_{k} \rho>d g a_{i}+i \rho, \quad i>i_{k}, R_{k}<\rho \leq r .
$$

On the other hand (5.11.1) tells us that

$$
d g a_{i_{k}}+i_{k^{\prime}} \rho>d g a_{i}+i \rho, \quad h \leq i<i_{k^{\prime}} R_{k}<\rho \leq r .
$$

Hence $\left(R_{k}, r\right]$ does not contain a hooking-radius of $f$, i.e. $k=\ell$ and $i_{\ell}$ is the unique i for which

$$
d g a_{i}+i \rho=M_{\rho}(f), \quad R_{\ell}<\rho \leq r .
$$

We see that for $1 \leq k \leq \ell-1$ the inequality of (5.11.3) does not hold for all $\rho \in\left(R_{k}, r\right]$, i.e. there exists a $\rho \in\left(R_{k}, r\right]$ such that
(5.11.4) $d g a_{i_{k}}+i_{k^{\prime}} \rho \leq \max _{i_{k}<i \leq n_{0}}\left(\right.$ dga $\left._{i}+i \rho\right)$.

Since both sides of this inequality are continuous functions of $\rho$, the smallest number $\rho$ for which (5.11.4) is valid is a point where the equality holds. Since

$$
d g a_{i}+i \rho<M_{\rho}(f)
$$

for $h \leq i<i_{k}$ by (5.11.1) and for $i>n_{0}$ by (5.8.2), this point must be the smallest hooking-radius of $f$ in $\left(R_{k}, r\right]$, i.e. $R_{k+1}$. Moreover we have

$$
\min _{i \geq h}\left\{i \mid d g a_{i}+i R_{k+1}=M_{R_{k+1}}(f)\right\}=i_{k}, \quad k=1, \ldots, \ell-1
$$

Furthermore we conclude that for $k=1, \ldots, \ell-1$ and $R_{k}<\rho<R_{k+1}$

$$
d g a_{i_{k}}+i_{k} \rho>\max _{i_{k}<i \leq n_{0}}\left(d g a_{i}+i \rho\right)
$$

Since $d g a_{i}+i \rho<M_{\rho}(f)$ for $h \leq i<i_{k}$ by (5.11.1) and for $i>n_{0}$ by (5.8.2) , $i_{k}$ is the unique $i$ such that

$$
d g a_{i}+i \rho=M_{\rho}(f), \quad R_{k}<\rho<R_{k+1}, \quad 1 \leq k \leq \ell-1
$$

This completes the proof.

The following figure illustrates the curve for $M_{\rho}(f), \rho \leq r$. Here $h=0, \ell=2, R_{2}<r, i_{1}=1, i_{2}=3$. This figure also explains the term "hooking-radius".

5.12. COROLLARY. In the notation of definition 5.10 we have (5.12.1) $\quad R_{k}=\min _{i>i_{k-1}} \frac{d g a_{i_{k-1}}-d g a_{i}}{i-i_{k-1}}, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, \ell$.

PROOF. From theorem 5.11 we have

$$
\min _{i \geq h}\left\{i \mid d g a_{i}+i R_{k}=M_{R_{k}}(f)\right\}=i_{k-1}, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, \ell
$$

Hence

$$
d g a_{i_{k-1}}-d g a_{i} \geq\left(i-i_{k-1}\right) R_{k}, \quad i \geq i_{k-1}
$$

from which we obtain
(5.12.2) $\frac{d g a_{i_{k-1}}-d g a_{i}}{i-i_{k-1}} \geq R_{k}, \quad i>i_{k-1}$.

Moreover it follows from theorem 5.11 that
(5.12.3) $\quad d g a_{i_{k}}+i_{k} R_{k}=M_{R_{k}}(f)=d g a_{i_{k-1}}+i_{k-1} R_{k} \quad k=1,2, \ldots, \ell$.

Now formula (5.12.1) follows from (5.12.2) and (5.12.3).

The concept of hooking-radius already appeared in Schöbes work (1930), but he introduced it by formula (5.12.1) with infimum instead of minimum and then the results of lemma 5.8 and theorem 5.11 are derived.
5.13. DEFINITION. Let $r \in \mathbb{R}, f \in P_{r}, f(t)=\sum_{i=h}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}, a_{h} \neq 0$.

For $\rho \leq r$ we define
(5.13.1) $d(f, \rho):=\max _{i \geq h}\left\{i \mid d g a_{i}+i \rho=M_{\rho}(f)\right\}-\min _{i \geq h}\left\{i \mid d g a_{i}+i \rho=M_{\rho}(f)\right\}$.
5.14. COROLLARY. In the notation of the definitions 5.10 and 5.13 we have

$$
d(f, \rho)= \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } \rho \neq R_{k}, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, \ell \\ i_{k}-i_{k-1} & \text { if } \rho=R_{k}, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, l\end{cases}
$$

PROOF. Obvious from theorem 5.11. $\square$
5.15. REMARK. Let $r \in \mathbb{R}, f \in P_{r}$. If $f$ has no hooking-radii in $(-\infty, r]$, then for all $t \in \Phi$ with $d g t=\rho \leq r$ we have

$$
d g f(t)=M_{\rho}(f)
$$

If $R_{1}<R_{2}<\ldots<R_{\ell} \leq r$ are the hooking-radii of $f$ in $(-\infty, r]$, then for $t \in \Phi$ with $d g t=\rho \leq r$ we have
(5.15.1) $\quad d g f(t)=M_{\rho}(f), \quad \rho \neq R_{1}, R_{2}, \ldots, R_{\ell}$
and
(5.15.2) $\quad d g f(t) \leq M_{\rho}(f), \quad \rho=R_{1}, R_{2}, \ldots, R_{\ell}$.

But we can prove more.
5.16. THEOREM. (Maximum Modulus Principle). Let $r \in \mathbb{Q}{ }^{*}$ ) $f \in P_{r}$. Then
*) In view of (1.7.3) (dgt $\in \mathbb{Q}$ for $t \in \Phi^{*}$ ) we restrict $r$ to $\mathbb{Q}$.

$$
\sup _{d g t \leq r} \operatorname{dg} f(t)=\sup _{d g t=r} d g f(t)=M_{r}(f)
$$

For the proof of theorem 5.16 we need two lemmas. Note that if $r$ is not a hooking-radius of $f$, then theorem 5.16 is an immediate consequence of remark 5.15 and theorem 5.11. $\left(M_{\rho}(f)\right.$ is a monotonic function of $\rho$ on ( $\left.-\infty, r\right]$.)
5.17. LEMMA. Let $r \in Q$ and $f \in P_{r}$. Then
$\sup _{d g t<r} d g f(t)=\sup _{d g t \leq r} d g f(t)=M_{r}(f)$.
PROOF. According to lemma 5.8 f has at most a finite number of hooking-radii in $(-\infty, r]$. Hence there is a $\rho<r$ such that $f$ has no hooking-radii in $[\rho, r)$. Since $\{d g t \mid t \in \Phi\}=Q$ we can choose an infinite sequence of points $t_{v} \in \Phi, v \in \mathbb{N}$, such that

$$
\rho<d g t_{1}<d g t_{2}<\cdots
$$

and
(5.17.1) $\lim _{v \rightarrow \infty} d g t_{v}=r$.

If we denote $\rho_{\nu}:=d g t_{v}, v \in \mathbb{N}$, then from remark 5.15 we have $\operatorname{dg} f\left(t_{\nu}\right)=M_{\rho_{\nu}}(f)$.

From (5.17.1) and the continuity of $M_{\rho}(f)$ as a function of $\rho$ we conclude that

$$
\lim _{V \rightarrow \infty} d g f\left(t_{V}\right)=\lim _{V \rightarrow \infty} M_{\rho_{V}}(f)=M_{r}(f)
$$

Hence
(5.17.2) $\sup _{d g t<r} d g f(t) \geq M_{r}(f)$.

On the other hand we have from remark 5.15
(5.17.3) $\sup _{d g t \leq r} d g f(t) \leq M_{r}(f)$.

Now the lemma follows from (5.17.2) and (5.17.3).
5.18. LEMMA. Let $r \in \mathbb{R}, f \in P_{r}$. Then for every $t_{0} \in \Phi$ with $d g t_{0} \leq r$ the function $g$, defined by

$$
g(t)=f\left(t+t_{0}\right), \quad t \in \Phi, d g t \leq r
$$

is also an element of $P_{r}$.
PROOF. Denote $f(t)=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}$ and define a sequence of polynomials $\left\{g_{\nu}\right\}_{\nu=1}^{\infty}$ in $P_{r}$ by

$$
g_{v}(t):=\sum_{i=0}^{v} a_{i}\left(t+t_{0}\right)^{i}
$$

For all $t \in \Phi$ with $d g t \leq r$ and $\mu<\nu$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{dg}\left(g_{\nu}(t)-g_{\mu}(t)\right) & \leq \max _{\mu<i \leq \nu}\left\{d g a_{i}+i d g\left(t+t_{0}\right)\right\} \\
& \leq \max _{\mu<i \leq \nu}\left(d g a_{i}+i r\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and therefore

$$
\sup _{d g t \leq r} d g\left(g_{\nu}(t)-g_{\mu}(t)\right) \leq \max _{\mu<i \leq \nu}\left(d g a_{i}+i r\right) .
$$

Hence, in view of lemma 5.17, we have

$$
M_{r}\left(g_{\nu}-g_{\mu}\right) \leq \max _{\mu<i \leq \nu}\left(d g a_{i}+i r\right)
$$

Since $f \in P_{r}$, this means that $\left\{g_{\nu}\right\}_{\nu=1}^{\infty}$ is a Cauchy sequence in $P_{r}$ with the norm topology from lemma 5.4 and hence a convergent sequence with limit, say $g$. In view of remark 5.5 we have for every $t \in \Phi$ with $d g t \leq r$

$$
g(t)=\lim _{v \rightarrow \infty} g_{v}(t)=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_{i}\left(t+t_{0}\right)^{i}=f\left(t+t_{0}\right) .
$$

Proof of theorem 5.16. Let $t_{0} \in \Phi, d g t_{0}=r$. According to lemma 5.18 the function $g$, defined by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (5.16.1) } g(t)=f\left(t+t_{0}\right), \quad t \in \Phi, d g t \leq r \text {, } \\
& \text { belongs to } P_{r} \text {. Hence }
\end{aligned}
$$

(5.16.2) $\sup _{d g t<r} d g g(t) \leq \sup _{d g t=r} d g f(t) \leq \sup _{d g t \leq r} d g f(t)$.

On the other hand it follows from lemma 5.17 and (5.16.1) that
(5.16.3) $\sup _{d g t<r} d g g(t)=\sup _{d g t \leq r} d g g(t)=\sup _{d g t \leq r} d g f(t)=M_{r}(f)$.

Now the theorem follows from (5.16.2) and (5.16.3). $\square$
5.19. LEMMA. Let $g \in \Phi[t]$ be given by

$$
g(t):=a_{0}+a_{1} t+\ldots+a_{n} t^{n}, a_{0} \neq 0, a_{n} \neq 0, n>0
$$

Let $R_{1}<R_{2}<\ldots<R_{\ell}$ be the hooking-radii of $g$ in $(-\infty, \infty)$. Then $g$ has $d\left(g, R_{k}\right)$ zeros $\beta \in \Phi$ with dg $\beta=R_{k}, 1 \leq k \leq \ell$, multiple zeros counted according to their multiplicity. There are no other zeros of g , i.e.

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{\ell} d\left(g, R_{k}\right)=n
$$

PROOF. Since $\Phi$ is algebraically closed, $g$ has exactly $n$ zeros in $\Phi$. Denote them by $\beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{n}$.

In view of $\mathrm{dg} g\left(\beta_{i}\right)=-\infty$, it follows from remark 5.15 that

$$
\operatorname{dg} \beta_{i} \in\left\{R_{1}, R_{2}, \ldots, R_{\ell}\right\}, \quad i=1,2, \ldots, n
$$

Hence, if $\mu_{j} \in \mathbb{I N}^{0}$ denotes the number of zeros $\beta$ with $d g \beta=R_{j}$, $j=1,2, \ldots, \ell$, then

$$
\mu_{1}+\mu_{2}+\ldots+\mu_{\ell}=n
$$

From

$$
g(t)=a_{n} \prod_{i=1}^{n}\left(t-\beta_{i}\right)
$$

we infer that
(5.19.1) $\quad d g g(t)=d g a_{n}+\sum_{i=1}^{n} d g\left(t-\beta_{i}\right)$.

Now take a number $k$ from the set $\{1,2, \ldots, \ell\}$. Let $t \in \Phi$ be such that
$R_{k}<d g t<R_{k+1}$ if $k \neq \ell$ and $R_{k}<d g t$ if $k=\ell$. Then it follows from (5.19.1) that

$$
\operatorname{dg} g(t)=d g a_{n}+\left(\mu_{1}+\mu_{2}+\ldots+\mu_{k}\right) d g t+\sum_{j=k+1}^{\ell} \mu_{j} R_{j} .
$$

Now $d g g(t)=M_{\rho}(g)$ where $\rho=d g t$. (See (5.15.1).) Hence for $k=1,2, \ldots, l$ and $\rho \in \mathbb{Q}$ such that $R_{k}<\rho<R_{k+1}$ if $k \neq \ell$ and $R_{k}<\rho$ if $k=\ell$, we have (5.19.2) $\quad M_{\rho}(g)=d g a_{n}+\left(\mu_{1}+\mu_{2}+\ldots+\mu_{k}\right) \rho+\sum_{j=k+1}^{\ell} \mu_{j} R_{j}$.

Taking $\rho \rightarrow R_{k}+0$, it follows from (5.19.2) and the continuity of $M_{\rho}$, that
(5.19.3) $\quad M_{R_{k}}(g)=d g a_{n}+\left(\mu_{1}+\mu_{2}+\ldots+\mu_{k}\right) R_{k}+\sum_{j=k+1}^{\ell} \mu_{j} R_{j}, \quad 1 \leq k \leq \ell$.

From this it follows by subtraction that for $1 \leq k<\ell$

$$
M_{R_{k+1}}(g)-M_{R_{k}}(g)=\left(\mu_{1}+\mu_{2}+\ldots+\mu_{k}\right)\left(R_{k+1}-R_{k}\right) .
$$

By theorem 5.11

$$
M_{R_{k+1}}(g)-M_{R_{k}}(g)=d g a_{i_{k}}+i_{k} R_{k+1}-\left(d g a_{i_{k}}+i_{k} R_{k}\right)=i_{k}\left(R_{k+1}-R_{k}\right)
$$

and so, in view of $R_{k+1}-R_{k} \neq 0$, we have
(5.19.4) $\quad i_{k}=\mu_{1}+\mu_{2}+\ldots+\mu_{k^{\prime}} \quad 1 \leq k<\ell$.

For $k=\ell$ we have from (5.19.2) and theorem 5.11

$$
d g a_{i^{\prime}}+i_{\ell} \rho=d g a_{n}+\left(\mu_{1}+\mu_{2}+\ldots+\mu_{\ell}\right) \rho, \quad \rho>R_{\ell} .
$$

Hence
(5.19.5). $\quad i_{\ell}=\mu_{1}+\mu_{2}+\ldots+\mu_{\ell}$.

The lemma now follows immediately from (5.19.4), (5.19.5) and corollary 5.14 .
5.20 THEOREM. Let $r \in \mathbb{R}, f \in P_{r}, f(t)=\sum_{i=h}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}, a_{h} \neq 0$. Then $f$ has a zero $\beta, \beta \in \Phi, \beta \neq 0$ with $d g \beta=\rho \leq r$ if and only if $\rho$ is a hooking-radius of f .

PROOF. Suppose that $\rho$ is not a hooking-radius of $f$. Then it follows from (5.15.1) that $d g f(t)=M_{\rho}(f) \neq-\infty$ for $t \in \Phi$, $d g t=\rho$. Hence $t$ cannot be a zero of $f$.

Suppose now that $R_{k}$ is a hooking-radius of $f$ in $(-\infty, r]$. Let $\left\{n_{\nu}\right\}_{\nu=1}^{\infty}$ be the increasing sequence of natural numbers such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& n_{1}>n_{0}, \text { where } n_{0} \text { is defined by (5.8.1), } \\
& a_{n_{v}} \neq 0, v=1,2, \ldots, \\
& a_{k}=0 \text { for } k>n_{0}, k \notin\left\{n_{v}\right\}_{v=1}^{\infty},
\end{aligned}
$$

i.e. the $a_{n_{V}}$ are the non-zero coefficients in $\sum_{i=h}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}$ with index greater than $n_{0}$. For $\nu \in \mathbb{N}$ we define
(5.20.1) $\quad P_{\nu}(t):=\sum_{i=h}^{n} a_{i} t^{i}$.

In view of $n_{1}>n_{0}$, it follows from the definition 5.7 of the hooking-radii that $P_{v}$ and $f$ have the same set of hooking-radii $R_{1}, R_{2}, \ldots, R_{l}$ in $(-\infty, r]$. Also the numbers $i_{k}, k=1,2, \ldots, \ell$ coincide for $P_{v}$ and $f$. We obtain from lemma 5.19 and corollary 5.14 that $P_{v}$ has just

$$
d=d_{k}=d\left(P_{v}, R_{k}\right)=d\left(f, R_{k}\right)=i_{k}-i_{k-1}
$$

$\operatorname{zeros} \beta_{1}^{(\nu)}, \beta_{2}^{(\nu)}, \ldots, \beta_{\alpha}^{(\nu)}$ in $\Phi$ with dg $\beta_{j}^{(\nu)}=R_{k}, j=1,2, \ldots$, d and just $i_{k-1} \operatorname{zeros} \beta$ in $\Phi$ with $d g \beta<R_{k} \cdot\left(i_{0}:=h\right.$.)

From

$$
P_{v}(t)=a_{n_{v}} \prod_{j=1}^{d}\left(t-\beta_{j}^{(\nu)}\right) \prod_{\substack{P_{v}(\beta)=0 \\ \\ \\ \\ d g \beta \neq R_{k}}}(t-\beta)
$$

it follows that

$$
d g P_{v}(t)=d g a_{n_{v}}+\sum_{j=1}^{d} d g\left(t-\beta_{j}^{(\nu)}\right)+i_{k-1} R_{k}+\sum_{\substack{P_{v}(\beta)=0 \\ d g \beta>R_{k}}} d g \beta
$$

for every $t \in \Phi$ with dg $t=R_{k}$. From theorem 5.11, (5.19.3) and from (5.19.4) or (5.19.5) we infer that

$$
\operatorname{dg} a_{\mathbf{i}_{\mathbf{k}}}-\operatorname{dg} a_{n_{v}}=\sum_{P_{v}(\beta)=0} \operatorname{dg} \beta>R_{k}
$$

Hence we have
(5.20.2) $\quad d g P_{v}(t)=\sum_{j=1}^{d} d g\left(t-\beta_{j}^{(v)}\right)+c_{k^{\prime}} \quad t \in \Phi, d g t=R_{k}$,
where $c_{k}$ is an abbreviation for $d g a_{i_{k}}+i_{k-1} R_{k}$; note that $c_{k}$ is independent of $\nu$.

Now we construct inductively a sequence $\left\{\beta_{\nu}\right\}_{\nu=1}^{\infty}$ in the following way. We choose $\beta_{1}$ arbitrarily from the $\operatorname{set}\left\{\beta_{1}^{(1)}, \beta_{2}^{(1)}, \ldots, \beta_{d}^{(1)}\right\}$. Then we take $\beta_{2}$ from the $\operatorname{set}\left\{\beta_{1}^{(2)}, \beta_{2}^{(2)}, \ldots, \beta_{\alpha}^{(2)}\right\}$ in such a way that

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(\beta_{2}-\beta_{1}\right)=\min _{1 \leq j \leq d} \operatorname{dg}\left(\beta_{j}^{(2)}-\beta_{1}\right)
$$

In general, when $\beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{\nu-1}$ are determined, we take $\beta_{\nu} \in\left\{\beta_{1}^{(\nu)}, \beta_{2}^{(\nu)}, \ldots, \beta_{d}^{(\nu)}\right\}$ such that
(5.20.3) $\quad \operatorname{dg}\left(\beta_{\nu}-\beta_{v-1}\right)=\min _{1 \leq j \leq d} \operatorname{dg}\left(\beta_{j}^{(\nu)}-\beta_{v-1}\right), \quad v=2,3, \ldots$.

Clearly

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
P_{v}\left(\beta_{v}\right)=0, & v=1,2, \ldots, \\
\operatorname{dg} \beta_{v}=R_{k}, & v=1,2, \ldots .
\end{array}
$$

From (5.20.3) we derive that

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(\beta_{v}-\beta_{v-1}\right) \leq \frac{1}{d_{k}} \sum_{j=1}^{d} \operatorname{dg}\left(\beta_{j}^{(v)}-\beta_{v-1}\right)
$$

and then from (5.20.2) with $t=\beta_{v-1}$

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(\beta_{\nu}-\beta_{v-1}\right) \leq \frac{1}{d_{k}} d g P_{v}\left(\beta_{v-1}\right)-\frac{1}{d_{k}} c_{k}
$$

The polynomials $P_{v}$ were constructed in such a way that

$$
P_{v}(t)=P_{v-1}(t)+a_{n_{v}} t^{n_{v}}, \quad v=2,3, \ldots ;
$$

hence

$$
P_{v}\left(\beta_{v-1}\right)=P_{v-1}\left(\beta_{v-1}\right)+a_{n} \beta_{v}{ }_{v-1}^{n}=a_{n} \beta_{v}{ }_{v-1}^{n}
$$

So we come to the conclusion that

$$
d g\left(\beta_{v}-\beta_{v-1}\right) \leq \frac{1}{d_{k}}\left(d g a_{n_{v}}+n_{v} R_{k}\right)-\frac{1}{d_{k}} c_{k}
$$

and since

$$
\lim _{v \rightarrow \infty} d g a_{n}+n_{v} R_{k}=-\infty
$$

because $R_{k} \leq r$, we see that $\left\{\beta_{v}\right\}_{v=1}^{\infty}$ is a Cauchy-sequence.
Define

$$
\beta:=\lim _{v \rightarrow \infty} \beta_{v} .
$$

Clearly $d g \quad \beta=R_{k}$. Finally

$$
\operatorname{dg} f(\beta)=\lim _{v \rightarrow \infty} \operatorname{dg} f\left(\beta_{v}\right)=\lim _{v \rightarrow \infty} d g\left\{P_{v}\left(\beta_{v}\right)+\sum_{i>n_{v}} a_{i} \beta_{v}^{i}\right\}=-\infty
$$

i.e.

$$
f(\beta)=0
$$

5.21. COROLLARY (SCHÖBE). An entire function $\mathrm{f}: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$ which has no zeros in $\Phi$ is a non-zero constant.

PROOF. Since $f$ has no zeros in $\Phi$ we have

$$
f(t)=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}, \quad a_{0} \neq 0
$$

From theorem 5.20 we see that $f$ has no hooking-radii in $(-\infty, \infty)$. Hence by theorem 5.11 (ii) we have

$$
d g a_{i}+i \rho<M_{\rho}(f)=d g a_{0}, \quad i \in \mathbb{N}, \rho \in \mathbb{R}
$$

This can only hold for all $\rho \in \mathbb{R}$ if

$$
d g a_{i}=-\infty, \quad i \in \mathbb{N}
$$

which means that $f(t)=a_{0}$.
5.22. LEMMA. Let $r \in \mathbb{R}, f \in P_{r}, f(t)=\sum_{i=h}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}, a_{h} \neq 0$. Let $\beta \neq 0$ be $a$ zero of $f$ with $\operatorname{dg} \beta=\rho \leq r$. Then there exists a $g \in P_{r}$ such that

$$
f(t)=(t-\beta) g(t)
$$

and

$$
d(f, p)=d(g, p)+1
$$

PROOF. Since $f \in P_{r}, \operatorname{dg} \beta \leq r$ and $\beta \neq 0$, we can define (5.22.1) $\quad b_{j}:=\frac{1}{\beta^{j+1}} \sum_{i>j} a_{i} \beta^{i}, \quad j \geq h$.

Next we show that if we put
(5.22.2) $g(t):=\sum_{j=h}^{\infty} b_{j} t^{j}$,
then $g \in P_{r}$. Indeed, for $j=h, h+1, \ldots$ we have from (5.22.1)
(5.22.3) $d g b_{j}+j \rho \leq \max _{i>j}\left(d g a_{i}+i \rho\right)-\rho$.

Hence, as $\rho \leq r$,

$$
d g b_{j}+j r \leq \max _{i>j}\left(d g a_{i}+i r\right)-r
$$

and since

$$
\lim _{i \rightarrow \infty}\left(d g a_{i}+i r\right)=-\infty,
$$

we conclude that $g \in P_{r}$. From (5.22.1), (5.22.2) and $f(\beta)=0$ we see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
g(t)(t-\beta) & =\sum_{j=h}^{\infty} b_{j} t^{j+1}-\sum_{j=h}^{\infty} \beta b_{j} t^{j} \\
& =\sum_{j=h+1}^{\infty}\left(b_{j-1}-\beta b_{j}\right) t^{j}-\beta b_{h} t^{h}=f(t) .
\end{aligned}
$$

This proves the first assertion of the lemma.
By the Maximum Modulus Principle, theorem 5.16, we have

$$
M_{\rho}(f)=\sup _{d g t=\rho}(d g g(t)+d g(t-\beta))
$$

from which it follows immediately that

$$
M_{\rho}(f) \leq M_{\rho}(g)+\rho
$$

On the other hand we derive from (5.22.3) that

$$
M_{\rho}(g) \leq M_{\rho}(f)-\rho
$$

Hence
(5.22.4) $\quad M_{\rho}(g)=M_{\rho}(f)-\rho$.

From theorem 5.20 we observe that $\rho=d g \beta$ is a hooking-radius of $f$, say $R_{k}$. From theorem 5.11 we observe that
(5.22.5) $\max _{i \geq h}\left\{i \mid d g a_{i}+i R_{k}=M_{R_{k}}(f)\right\}=i_{k}$
and
(5.22.6) $\left.\min _{i \geq h}\left\{i \mid d g a_{i}+i R_{k}=M_{R_{k}}(f)\right\}=i_{k-1} *\right)$.

Hence from (5.22.1) and (5.22.5) we obtain
*) where $i_{0}:=h$.
(5.22.7) $d g b_{j}+j R_{k}=d g\left(\sum_{i>j} a_{i} B^{i}\right)-R_{k}<M_{R_{k}}(f)-R_{k}, \quad j \geq i_{k}$ and
(5.22.8) $\quad d g b_{i_{k}}-1+\left(i_{k}-1\right) R_{k}=M_{R_{k}}(f)-R_{k}$.

Since $f(\beta)=0$ we can rewrite (5.22.1) as

$$
b_{j}=-\frac{1}{\beta^{j+1}} \sum_{i \leq j} a_{i} \beta^{i}, \quad j \geq h,
$$

from which it follows, using (5.22.6), that
(5.22.9) $d g b_{j}+j R_{k}<M_{R_{k}}(f)-R_{k}, \quad j<i_{k-1}$
and
(5.22.10) $d g b_{i_{k-1}}+i_{k-1} R_{k}=M_{R_{k}}(f)-R_{k}$.

From (5.22.7),...,(5.22.10) and corollary 5.14 we obtain

$$
d\left(g, R_{k}\right)=d\left(f, R_{k}\right)-1 .
$$

5.23. THEOREM (SCHÖBE). Let $r \in \mathbb{R}, f \in P_{r}, f(t)=\sum_{i=h}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}, a_{h} \neq 0$. For $\rho \leq r$ let $d(f, \rho)$ be defined by (5.13.1). If $R_{1}<R_{2}<\ldots<R_{\ell}$ are the hook-ing-radii of $f$ in ( $-\infty, r]$, then $f$ has a zero of order $h$ in 0 and $d\left(f, R_{k}\right)$ zeros $\beta$ with $d g ' \beta=R_{k}{ }^{\prime} k=1,2, \ldots, l$, with multiple zeros counted according to their multiplicity ${ }^{*}$ ). These are the only zeros of $f$ in $\{t \in \Phi \mid d g t \leq r\}$.

PROOF. In view of theorem 5.20 we only have to prove that $f$ has $d\left(f, R_{k}\right)$ zeros in $\left\{t \in \Phi \mid d g t=R_{k}\right\}, k=1,2, \ldots, \ell$. From theorem 5.20 we observe that f has at least one zero $\beta$ with $\mathrm{dg} \beta=\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{k}}, 1 \leq \mathrm{k} \leq \ell$. According to lemma 5.22 there is a $g \in P_{r}, g(t)=\sum_{i=h}^{\infty} b_{i} t^{i}$, such that

$$
f(t)=(t-\beta) g(t)
$$

and
*) In view of the previous lemma it is obvious what must be understood by the order of a zero.

$$
d\left(g, R_{k}\right)=d\left(f, R_{k}\right)-1 .
$$

If $d\left(g, R_{k}\right)=0$, then it follows from (5.13.1) that there is only one $i \geq h$ such that

$$
d g b_{i}+i R_{k}=M_{R_{k}}(g)
$$

Thus $R_{k}$ is not a hooking-radius of $g$ and therefore $g$ has no zeros in
$\left\{t \mid d g t=R_{k}\right\}$. Hence in this case $f$ has $d\left(f, R_{k}\right)=1$ zero in $\left\{t \in \Phi \mid d g t=R_{k}\right\}$.

In case $d\left(g, R_{k}\right)>0$ it follows from (5.13.1) that $R_{k}$ is a hookingradius of $g$. Then we apply the argument above with $g$ instead of $f$. Now it is obvious how we proceed and that the process stops after $d\left(f, R_{k}\right)$ steps.
5.24. COROLLARY (Product Formula for Entire Functions). Let f: $\Phi \rightarrow \Phi$ be an entire function, $f(t)=\sum_{i=h}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}, a_{h} \neq 0$. Let $R$ denote the set of hookingradii of f in $(-\infty, \infty)$. ( $R$ can be empty, finite or infinite.) For $R \in R$, let $\beta_{R, 1}, \beta_{R, 2}, \ldots, \beta_{R, d(f, R)}$ denote the zeros of $f$ with valuation $R$. Then for all $t \in \Phi$ we have
(5.24.1) $f(t)=a_{h} t^{h} \prod_{R \in R} \prod_{i=1}^{d(f, R)}\left(1-\frac{t}{\beta_{R, i}}\right)$.

PROOF. If $f$ has no zeros, the theorem is a special case, with $h=0$, of corollary 5.21. If $f$ has a finite number of zeros, the theorem follows easily from lemma 5.22 and corollary 5.21.

Now we suppose that $f$ has an infinite number of hooking-radii in $(-\infty, \infty)$. Let $\left\{R_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$ be the increasing sequence of hooking-radii of $f$. According to theorem 5.23 and lemma 5.22 we can define a sequence of entire functions $g_{n}$ by
(5.24.2) $f(t)=a_{h} t^{h} \prod_{k=1}^{n} \prod_{i=1}^{d\left(f, R_{k}\right)}\left(1-\frac{t}{\beta_{R_{k}, i}}\right) g_{n}(t)$.

Clearly $g_{n}$ has no zeros in $\left(-\infty, R_{n}\right]$ and we can write
(5.24.3)

$$
g_{n}(t)=1+\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} b_{n i} t^{i}, \quad b_{n i} \in \Phi
$$

From theorem 5.20 we conclude that $g_{n}$ has no hooking-radii in $\left(-\infty, R_{n}\right]$ and therefore, by theorem 5.11,
(5.24.4) $\quad d g b_{n i}+i R_{n}<0, \quad i \geq 1$.

Now let $r \in \mathbb{R}$ be arbitrary but fixed. From (5.24.3) we get

$$
M_{r}\left(g_{n}-1\right)=\max _{i \geq 1}\left(d g b_{n i}+i r\right) \leq \max _{i \geq 1}\left(d g b_{n i}+i R_{n}\right)+\max _{i \geq 1} i\left(r-R_{n}\right)
$$

Since $\left\{R_{n}\right\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ is an infinite, increasing sequence we infer from (5.24.4) that

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} M_{r}\left(g_{n}-1\right)=-\infty
$$

i.e. the sequence $\left\{g_{n}\right\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ in $P_{r}$ is convergent to the identity function $1 \in P_{r}$. Hence (5.24.1) is valid for $t \in \Phi$ with $d g t \leq r$. But since $r$ was chosen arbitrarily we have proved (5.24.1) for all $t \in \Phi$.

The following corollary is almost equivalent to theorem 2.12 , but its proof is different.
5.25. COROLLARY. The function $\psi$, given by

$$
\psi(t):=\sum_{j=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{j} \frac{t^{q^{j}}}{F_{j}}, \quad t \in \Phi
$$

has a zero of order 1 in 0 and $q^{k}-q^{k-1}$ zeros $\beta \in \Phi$ with $d g \beta=k+\frac{1}{q-1}$, $\mathrm{k} \in \mathbb{N}$. Moreover, if $\alpha \in \Phi$ is any zero of $\psi$ with $d g \alpha=\frac{q}{q-1}$, then

$$
\psi(t)=t \prod_{E \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]}\left(1-\frac{t}{E \alpha}\right) .
$$

PROOF. From corollary 5.12 and definition 5.10 we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& i_{0}=1 ; \\
& R_{1}=\min _{j>0} \frac{-d g F_{0}+d g F_{j}}{q^{j}-1}=1+\frac{1}{q-1} ; \\
& i_{1}=\max _{j>0}\left\{q^{j} \left\lvert\,-d g F_{j}+q^{j} \cdot \frac{q}{q-1}=M_{R_{1}}(\psi)\right.\right\}=q \\
& d\left(\psi, R_{1}\right)=q-1
\end{aligned}
$$

and inductively for $k>1$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& R_{k}=\min _{j \geq k} \frac{-d g F_{k-1}+d g F_{j}}{q^{j}-q^{k-1}}=k+\frac{1}{q-1} ; \\
& i_{k}=\max _{j \geq k}\left\{q^{j} \left\lvert\,-d g F_{j}+q^{j}\left(k+\frac{1}{q-1}\right)=M_{R_{k}}(\psi)\right.\right\}=q^{k} ; \\
& d\left(\psi, R_{k}\right)=q^{k}-q^{k-1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

According to theorem $5.23 \psi$ has exactly $q^{k}-q^{k-1}$ zeros $\beta$ with $\operatorname{dg} \beta=k+\frac{1}{q-1}, k \in \mathbb{N}$.

Let $\alpha$ be a zero of $\psi$, then it follows from theorem 2.11a,b,c that $\psi(\mathrm{E} \alpha)=0$ for all $\mathrm{E} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}]$.

Now let $\alpha \neq 0$ be a zero of $\psi$ such that $d g \alpha$ is minimal, i.e. $d g \alpha=\frac{q}{q-1}$. Since the number of polynomials in $\mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$ of degree less than $k$ equals $q^{k}$, we conclude that the set of zeros of $\psi$ is exactly $\left\{E \alpha \mid E \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]\right\}$. The last assertion now follows from (5.24.1).
5.26. COROLLARY. The functions $J_{n}\left(n \in \mathbb{N}^{0}\right)$, defined in (4.1.1) by

$$
J_{n}(t):=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{k} \frac{t^{q^{n+k}}}{F_{n+k} F_{k}^{q^{n}}}
$$

have a zero of order $\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{n}}$ in $\mathrm{t}=0$ and have $\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{k}}-\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{k}-1}$ different zeros $\beta$ with $\operatorname{dg} \beta=n+2 k+\frac{2}{q-1}$, each of order $q^{n}(k \in \mathbb{N})$.

PROOF. From corollary 5.12 and definition 5.10 we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
i_{0} & =q^{n} ; \\
R_{1} & =\min _{k>0} \frac{-d g\left(F_{n} F_{0}^{q^{n}}\right)+d g\left(F_{n+k} F_{k}^{q^{n}}\right)}{q^{n+k}-q^{n}}=n+2+\frac{2}{q-1} ; \\
i_{1} & =\max _{k>0}\left\{q^{n+k} \left\lvert\,-d g\left(F_{n+k} F_{k}^{q^{n}}\right)+\left(n+\frac{2 q}{q-1}\right) q^{n+k}=M_{R_{1}}\left(J_{n}\right)\right.\right\} \\
& =\max _{k>0}\left\{q^{n+k} \left\lvert\, q^{n+k}\left(-2 k+\frac{2 q}{q-1}\right)=M_{R_{1}}\left(J_{n}\right)\right.\right\}=q^{n+1}
\end{aligned}
$$

and inductively

$$
\begin{aligned}
& R_{k}=n+2 k+\frac{2}{q-1} \\
& i_{k}=q^{n+k}
\end{aligned}
$$

Now it follows from theorem 5.23 that $J_{n}$ has a zero of order $q^{n}$ in $t=0$ and that $J_{n}$ has $q^{n+k}-q^{n+k-1}$ zeros $\beta$ with

$$
\operatorname{dg} \beta=n+2 k+\frac{2}{q-1}, \quad k \in \mathbb{N}
$$

Besides, it follows that $J_{n}$ has no other zeros.
From theorem 4.2(i) we see that every zero of $J_{n}$ is a zero of $J_{-n}$, moreover that every zero of $J_{n}$ has multiplicity at least $q^{n}$.

Let $\beta$ be a zero of $J_{n}$ with $d g \beta=n+2+\frac{2}{q-1}$. Then it follows from the linearity of $J_{n}$ that $c \beta, c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$ is also a zero of $J_{n}$ and $d g(c \beta)=d g \beta$. Hence $J_{n}$ has at least $q-1$ different zeros $\beta$ with $d g \beta=n+2+\frac{2}{q-1}$ and multiplicity $\geq q^{n}$. Since $d\left(J_{n}, R_{1}\right)=q^{n+1}-q^{n}$, we conclude that $J_{n}^{q-1}$ has exactly $q-1$ different zeros $\beta$ with $d g \quad \beta=n+2+\frac{2}{q-1}$, each of multiplicity $q^{n}$.

Suppose we have proved that $J_{n}$ has exactly $q^{k}-q^{k-1}$ different zeros $\beta$ with $d g \beta=n+2 k+\frac{2}{q-1}$, each of multiplicity $q^{n}, k=1,2, \ldots, k$. Then the number of different zeros $\beta$ with $d g \beta \leq n+2 \kappa+\frac{2}{q-1}$ equals $q^{k}$. Let $\beta^{*}$ be a zero of $J_{n}$ with $d g \beta^{*}=n+2(\kappa+1)+\frac{2}{q-1}$. Then for every zero $\beta$ with $d g \beta<d g \beta^{*}$ it follows, from the linearity of $J_{n}$, that $c \beta^{*}+\beta\left(c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}\right)$ is a zero of $J_{n}$ and $d g\left(c \beta^{*}+\beta\right)=d g \beta^{*}$. Hence $J_{n}$ has at least $(q-1) q^{k}$ different zeros $\beta$ with $d g \quad \beta=n+2(\kappa+1)+\frac{2}{q-1}$, each of multiplicity $\geq q^{n}$. Since $d\left(J_{n}, R_{\kappa+1}\right)=q^{n+\kappa+1}-q^{n+\kappa}$, we conclude that $J_{n}$ has exactly $q^{\kappa+1}-q^{\kappa}$ different zeros $\beta$ with $d g \beta=n+2(\kappa+1)+\frac{2}{q-1}$, each of multiplicity $q^{n}$.

FINAL REMARK. The supremum in the Maximum Modulus Principle (theorem 5.16) is actually attained and is therefore a maximum. To prove this we may suppose that $r=0$ and that

$$
f(t)=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_{i} t^{i}, \quad a_{0} \neq 0
$$

Let $n_{0}$ denote the smallest natural number such that $d g a_{i}<d g a_{0}$, $i>n_{0}$ (see 5.8.1). If we define

$$
g(t):=\sum_{i=0}^{n_{0}} a_{i} t^{i},
$$

then

$$
M_{0}(g)=M_{0}(f) .
$$

Now we define inductively the following sequence of elements of $\Phi: t_{0}=1$; for $i=1,2, \ldots, n_{0}$ the element $t_{i}$ is a solution of the equation

$$
t^{q}-t+t_{i-1}=0
$$

(This is possible since $\Phi$ is algebraically closed.) Then

$$
\operatorname{dg} t_{i}=0, \quad 0 \leq i \leq n_{0}
$$

and

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(t_{i}-t_{j}\right)=0, \quad i \neq j, 0 \leq i, j \leq n_{0}
$$

The system of equations

$$
\sum_{i=0}^{n_{0}} a_{i} t_{j}^{i}=g\left(t_{j}\right), \quad j=0,1, \ldots, n_{0}
$$

in $a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n_{0}}$ is solvable and

$$
d g a_{i} \leq \max _{0 \leq j \leq n_{0}} d g g\left(t_{j}\right), \quad i=0,1, \ldots, n_{0}
$$

So according to theorem 5.16

$$
M_{0}(g)=\max _{0 \leq i \leq n_{0}} d g a_{i} \leq \max _{0 \leq j \leq n_{0}} d g g\left(t_{j}\right) \leq \sup _{d g t=0} d g g(t)=M_{0}(g)
$$

Hence there exists a $t^{*} \in \Phi$ with $d g t^{*}=0$ such that

$$
\operatorname{dg} g\left(t^{*}\right)=M_{0}(g)
$$

Since

$$
\operatorname{dg} f\left(t^{*}\right)=\operatorname{dg}\left(g\left(t^{*}\right)+\sum_{i>n_{0}} a_{i} t^{* i}\right)=\operatorname{dg} g\left(t^{*}\right)
$$

and since $M_{0}(f)=M_{0}(g)$, we have proved our assertion.

## CHAPTER II

## TRANSCENDENCE IN $\Phi$

In the first section of this chapter we shall mention some properties of elements of $\Phi$ which are algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. In the second section we shall give a survey of known results on transcendence in the field $\Phi$. For instance, we mention analogues of the following three classical theorems:
(i) the theorem of Liouville on the approximation of algebraic numbers by rational numbers (M. MAHLER, 1949),
(ii) the theorem on transcendence of the values of the exponential function in non-zero algebraic points (L.I. WADE, 1941),
(iii) the Gelfond-Schneider theorem (L.I. WADE, 1946).
6. PRELIMINARIES

In this section $k$ is always a subfield of $\Phi$.
6.1. DEFINITION. An element $\mathrm{E} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}]$ is called a monic element of $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}]$ if $E$ is a monic polynomial over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$.

The elements $A_{1}, A_{2}, \ldots, A_{n} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}]$ are called relatively prime if they do not have a common divisor in $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}]$ other than units.
Notation: $\left(A_{1}, A_{2}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)=1$.
The least common multiple of the n elements $\mathrm{B}_{1}, \mathrm{~B}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{~B}_{\mathrm{n}} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}] \backslash\{0\}$ is an element $B \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ for which
(i) $\quad \frac{B}{B_{i}} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X], \quad i=1,2, \ldots, n$,
(ii) dg B is minimal,
(iii) B is monic.

It follows that $B$ is uniquely determined.

Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ of degree $n$. From theorem 0.9 it is obvious that there exists a unique, irreducible polynomial $Q \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x][t]$
of degree $n$ with the properties:
(i) $\quad Q(\alpha)=0$,
(ii) $Q$ is a primitive polynomial over $\mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$,
(iii) the leading coefficient of $Q$ is monic.
6.2. DEFINITION. Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ of degree $n$. The unique, irreducible, primitive polynomial $Q \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x][t]$ of degree $n$ with monic leading coefficient for which $Q(\alpha)=0$ is called the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$ over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}]$.

The element $\alpha$ is called integral algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ or an algebraic integer of $\Phi$ if the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}]$ has leading coefficient 1.
N.B. In the following chapters by "minimal polynomial of $\alpha$ " we shall always mean the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$.
6.3. DEFINITION. Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be algebraic. Every $E \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X] \backslash\{0\}$, for which $\mathrm{E} \alpha$ is an algebraic integer, is called a denominator of $\alpha$.
6.4. LEMMA. (WADE 1941). Let $\mathrm{P} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})[\mathrm{t}]$ be a polynomial of degree $\mathrm{n} \geq 1$ (in $t$ ). Then there exists a linear polynomial $Q \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x][t]$ of degree $q^{n}(i n ~ t)$ such that P divides Q .

PROOF. By the Euclidean algorithm we have
(6.4.1) $\quad t^{q^{i}}=\sum_{j=0}^{n-1} b_{j}^{(i)} t^{j}+R_{i}(t) P(t), \quad i=0,1, \ldots, n$,
with $R_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)[t], b_{j}^{(i)} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. Note that if $m \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ is defined by $q^{m} \leq n-1<q^{m+1}$, then $R_{i}=0$ and

$$
\mathrm{b}_{\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{i}}}^{(\mathrm{i})}=1, \quad \mathrm{i}=0,1, \ldots, \mathrm{~m} .
$$

Furthermore $R_{i}$ has degree $q^{i}-n$, $i=m+1, \ldots, n$.
If we eliminate $1, t, \ldots, t^{n-1}$ succesively in the right hand side of (6.4.1), we obtain

$$
b_{0} t+b_{1} t^{q}+\ldots+b_{n} t^{q^{n}}=R(t) P(t)
$$

where $b_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}(x)$ and $R \in \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)[t]$. From the elimination process it follows that not all the $\mathrm{b}_{\mathrm{i}}$ can be zero. Let

$$
v:=\max _{1 \leq i \leq n}\left\{i \mid b_{i} \neq 0\right\}
$$

and let $c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x] \backslash\{0\}$ be such that $\mathrm{Cb}_{0}, \ldots, \mathrm{Cb}_{\mathcal{V}} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{x}]$. The polynomial $Q$, defined by

$$
Q(t):=\left(\mathrm{Cb}_{0}\right)^{q^{n-v}} t^{q^{n-v}}+\ldots+\left(\mathrm{Cb}_{\nu}\right)^{q^{n-v}} t^{q^{n}}
$$

satisfies the conditions of the lemma. $\square$
6.5. LEMMA. Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be separable algebraic over $k \subset \Phi$ and let $P \in k[t]$ be its minimal polynomial. Then the zeros of P are all different.

PROOF. See O. ZARISKI and P. SAMUEL (1958), Ch.II, $\S 5$ def.3, cor. 2.
6.6. DEFINITION. Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be algebraic over $k \subset \Phi$. The different zeros of the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$ are called the conjugated elements of $\alpha$ over $k$. 6.7. THEOREM. Let $\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{m} \in \Phi$ be separable algebraic over $k \subset \Phi$. Then $\mathrm{k}\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{m}\right)$ is a separable algebraic extension of $k$.

PROOF. See O. ZARISKI and P. SAMUEL (1958) Ch.II th. 10 or I. ADAMSON, th.13.7.
6.8. THEOREM. Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be separable algebraic over $k \subset \Phi$ of degree n and let $\alpha_{1}=\alpha, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}$ be the conjugated elements of $\alpha$ over $k$. Then there exist exactly n distinct monomorphisms $\sigma_{i}: \mathrm{k}(\alpha) \hookrightarrow \Phi, \mathrm{i}=1, \ldots, \mathrm{n}$ under which k is invariant. These k -monomorphisms can be given by

$$
\sigma_{i}(\alpha)=\alpha_{i}, \quad i=1,2, \ldots, n
$$

PROOF. See O. ZARISKI and P. SAMUEL (1958), Ch.II, th. 16 or I. ADAMSON, th.15.4.
6.9. LEMMA. Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be algebraic over $k \subset \Phi$ of degree n. For $\beta \in \mathrm{k}(\alpha)$ let $P \in k[t]$ denote the monic, irreducible polynomial with $P(\beta)=0$, given by

$$
P(t):=t^{m}+b_{m-1} t^{m-1}+\ldots+b_{1} t+b_{0}
$$

## 2.4

Then

$$
\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}(\alpha) \rightarrow \mathrm{k}}(\beta)=(-1)^{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{b}}^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{~m}} \mathrm{~m}
$$

PROOF. See O. ZARISKI and P. SAMUEL, Ch.II,§10 or P. RIBENBOIM, part II, 5A.
6.10. LEMMA. Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be separable algebraic over $k \subset \Phi$ of degree n and let $\sigma_{1}, \sigma_{2}, \ldots, \sigma_{n}$ be the $\mathrm{n} k$-monomorphisms $\mathrm{k}(\alpha) \hookrightarrow \Phi$. Then for every $\beta \in \mathrm{k}(\alpha)$ :

$$
\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}(\alpha) \rightarrow \mathrm{k}}(\beta)=\prod_{j=1}^{\mathrm{n}} \sigma_{j}(\beta)
$$

PROOF. See O. ZARISKI and P. SAMUEL, Ch.II, $\S 10$ or P. RIBENBOIM, part II, 5A.
6.11. REMARK. Let $K$ be a finite, separable algebraic extension of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. Then there exists a $\theta \in K$ such that $K=\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)(\theta)$ (see 0 . ZARISKI and P. SAMUEL Ch.II,th.19.) It follows from lemma 6.9 that for all $\beta \in K$

$$
N_{K \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}}(\mathrm{X}) \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})
$$

Moreover, if $\beta$ is an algebraic integer of $K$, then

$$
\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{K} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}}(\mathrm{X}) \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}]
$$

Hence, if $\beta \neq 0$ is an algebraic integer of $K$, then

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(N_{K \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{q}}(X)(\beta)\right) \in \mathbb{N}^{0}
$$

In 1946 L.I. WADE proved an analogon of the classical Gelfond-Schneider theorem. The proof of Wade's theorem starts with the construction of an auxiliary function. This leads to the problem of solving a system of $r$ homogeneous, linear equations in s variables ( $r<s$ ) with coefficients in a given separable algebraic extension of the groundfield $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$. In the classical case we know, by Siegel's lemma (see e.g. Th. SCHNEIDER (1957), HILFSSATZ 31), that there is a solution with absolute value not too large. In the following we shall give a proof of an analogue of Siegel's lemma.
6.12. LEMMA. Let $\mathrm{m}, \mathrm{n} \in \mathbb{N}$ with $\mathrm{m}<\mathrm{n}$. The system of m homogeneous, Iinear equations in the n unknowns $\mathrm{X}_{\mathrm{i}}$, $\mathrm{i}=1,2, \ldots, \mathrm{n}$,
(6.12.1) $\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_{k i} X_{i}=0, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, m$,
where $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{ki}} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{x}]$ and

$$
\max _{1 \leq i \leq n} \operatorname{dg} A_{k i} \leq a \quad(a \geq 0)
$$

$1 \leq \mathrm{k} \leq \mathrm{m}$
has a non-trivial solution $\mathrm{C}_{1}, \mathrm{C}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{n}}$ with

$$
C_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x], \quad i=1, \ldots, n
$$

such that

$$
\operatorname{dg} C_{i} \leq \frac{a m}{n-m}
$$

PROOF. Define $y_{k} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]\left[t_{1}, \ldots, t_{n}\right]$ by

$$
y_{k}\left(t_{1}, \ldots, t_{n}\right):=\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_{k i} t_{i}, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, m
$$

For $X_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x], i=1,2, \ldots, n$, we have
(6.12.2) $\quad Y_{k}:=Y_{k}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X], \quad k=1,2, \ldots, m$.

Let $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$ be arbitrary. The "cube" $\left\{\left(\xi_{1}, \ldots, \xi_{n}\right) \mid \xi_{i} \in \Phi, d g \xi_{i}<\ell\right\}$ contains $q^{l n}$ lattice points $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$. (The notion of lattice point in $\Phi^{n}$ means an n-tuple $\left(X_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ of elements $x_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$, $i=1, \ldots, n$. ) For these lattice points $\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ we have
(6.12.3) $\quad d g Y_{k}<\max _{1 \leq i \leq n} d g A_{k_{i}}+\ell \leq a+\ell, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, m$.

Hence every lattice point $\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \mid d g x_{i}<\ell\right.$, $\left.i=1, \ldots, n\right\}$ corresponds, via (6.12.2), with one of the $q^{n}(a+\ell) m$ lattice points of the cube $\left\{\left(n_{1}, \ldots, \eta_{m}\right) \mid \eta_{i} \in \Phi, d g \eta_{i}<a+\ell\right\}$.

Now let $\ell$ be the smallest number such that the number of lattice points $\left\{\left(Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{m}\right) \mid d g Y_{i}<a+\ell\right\}$ is less than the number of lattice points $\left\{\left(X_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \mid d g X_{i}<\ell\right\}$;

$$
\ell:=\left[\frac{a m}{n-m}+1\right]
$$

Then according to the Box Principle of Dirichlet there are at least two different lattice points $\left(C_{1}^{(1)}, \ldots, C_{n}^{(1)}\right.$ ) and $\left(C_{1}^{(2)}, \ldots, C_{n}^{(2)}\right.$ ) which correspond with the same lattice point $\left(Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{m}\right)$. Hence $\left(C_{1}, \ldots, C_{n}\right)$ with $C_{i}=C_{i}^{(1)}-C_{i}^{(2)}, i=1,2, \ldots, n$, is a solution of (6.12.1) and
$\operatorname{dg} C_{i} \leq \max \left(\operatorname{dg} C_{i}^{(1)}, d g C_{i}^{(2)}\right)<\left[\frac{a m}{n-m}+1\right]$.
Since $C_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$, we conclude
$\operatorname{dg} C_{i} \leq \frac{a m}{n-m}, \quad i=1,2, \ldots, n$.
6.13. LEMMA. Let $K$ be a finite, separable algebraic extension of degree $h$ of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. Then there exists a basis $\beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{h}$ of algebraic integers of $K$ such that every algebraic integer $\xi \in \mathrm{K}$ can be written uniquely as

$$
\xi=\sum_{i=1}^{h} A_{i} \beta_{i}, \quad A_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]
$$

PROOF. See for instance O. ZARISKI and P. SAMUEL (1958), Ch.V,§4,
Cor. 2.
6.14. DEFINITION. Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ of degree $n$ and let $\alpha_{1}=\alpha, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{n} \in \Phi$ be the roots of the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$. Then we define

$$
d^{*}(\alpha):=\max \left(d g \alpha_{1}, \operatorname{dg} \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \operatorname{dg} \alpha_{n} ; 0\right)
$$

REMARK. Let $K$ be a finite, separable algebraic extension of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ of degree $h$ and let $\sigma_{1}, \sigma_{2}, \ldots, \sigma_{h}$ denote the distinct $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$-monomorphisms $K \hookrightarrow \Phi$. If $P \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X][t]$ is the minimal polynomial of $\beta \in K$, then

$$
P\left(\sigma_{j}(\beta)\right)=\sigma_{j}(P(\beta))=0
$$

and

$$
\prod_{j=1}^{h}\left(t-\sigma_{j}(\beta)\right)
$$

is a polynomial with coefficients in $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. Hence the set of zeros of $P$ equals the set $\left\{\sigma_{1}(\beta), \sigma_{2}(\beta), \ldots, \sigma_{n}(\beta)\right\}$. Therefore in this case we have

$$
d^{*}(\beta)=\max \left\{\operatorname{dg} \sigma_{1}(\beta), \operatorname{dg} \sigma_{2}(\beta), \ldots, \operatorname{dg} \sigma_{h}(\beta) ; 0\right\} .
$$

6.15. LEMMA. If $\alpha$ and $\beta$ are algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$, then
(6.15.1) $d^{*}(\alpha+\beta) \leq \max \left(d^{*}(\alpha), d^{*}(\beta)\right)$
and
(6.15.2) $d^{*}(\alpha \beta) \leq d^{*}(\alpha)+d^{*}(\beta)$.

PROOF. Let $\alpha_{1}=\alpha, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}$ and $\beta_{1}=\beta, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{m}$ denote the zeros of the minimal polynomials of $\alpha$ and $\beta$, respectively. Then the coefficients of

$$
\prod_{i=1, \ldots, n}^{j=1, \ldots, m} \mid
$$

are elements of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. The minimal polynomial of $\alpha+\beta$ is a divisor of this polynomial. Hence the zeros of this minimal polynomial belong to the set $\left\{\alpha_{i}+\beta_{j} \mid i=1, \ldots, n ; j=1, \ldots, m\right\}$. Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
d^{*}(\alpha+\beta) \leq \max _{i, j}\left(\operatorname{dg}\left(\alpha_{i}+\beta_{j}\right) ; 0\right) & \leq \max _{i, j}\left(\max \left(\operatorname{dg} \alpha_{i}, d g \beta_{j}\right) ; 0\right) \\
& \leq \max \left(d^{*}(\alpha), d^{*}(\beta)\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Relation (6.15.2) is proved analogously by considering the polynomial

$$
\prod_{\substack{i=1, \ldots, n \\ j=1, \ldots, m}}\left(t-\alpha_{i} \beta_{j}\right) \cdot \square
$$

6.16. LEMMA. (WADE 1946) Let K be a finite, separable algebraic extension of degree $h$ of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. Let $r, s \in \mathbb{N}, r<s$. Then the system of $r$ homogeneous, linear equations in the $s$ unknowns

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{S} \alpha_{k i} x_{i}=0, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, r \tag{6.16.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the $\alpha_{k i}$ are algebraic integers in $K$ and
2.8

$$
a:=\max _{\substack{1 \leq i \leq s \\ 1 \leq k \leq r}} d^{*}\left(\alpha_{k i}\right)
$$

has a non-trivial solution $\left(\xi_{1}, \xi_{2}, \ldots, \xi_{s}\right)$ in algebraic integers $\xi_{i}$ of $K$ with

$$
d^{*}\left(\xi_{i}\right)<\frac{c s+a r}{s-r}, \quad i=1,2, \ldots, s
$$

Here $c$ denotes a positive constant which depends only on the field K .

PROOF. Let $\beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{h}$ be a basis of algebraic integers of $K$ as mentioned in lemma 6.13. Since $\alpha_{k i} \beta_{j}, k=1, \ldots, r ; i=1, \ldots, s ; j=1, \ldots, h$ are algebraic integers of $K$, we can write
(6.16.2) $\quad \alpha_{k i} \beta_{j}=\sum_{v=1}^{h} A_{k i j v} \beta_{v}$
with $A_{\text {kijv }} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$. Now consider the rh homogeneous, linear equations in the sh unknowns $X_{i j}, 1 \leq i \leq s ; 1 \leq j \leq h$
(6.16.3) $\sum_{i=1}^{S} \sum_{j=1}^{h} A_{k i j v} X_{i j}=0, \quad k=1, \ldots, r ; v=1, \ldots, h$.

Since $r h<$ sh and $A_{k i j v} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}]$, we can now apply lemma 6.12. To this end we need an upper bound for $d g A_{k i j v}$.

Let $\sigma_{1}, \ldots, \sigma_{h}$ denote the $h$ distinct $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$-monomorphisms $K \hookrightarrow \Phi$; then for $1 \leq k \leq r, 1 \leq i \leq s, 1 \leq j \leq h$ we have

$$
\sigma_{\mu}\left(\alpha_{k i} \beta_{j}\right)=\sum_{\nu=1}^{h} A_{k i j \nu} \sigma_{\mu}\left(\beta_{\nu}\right), \quad \mu=1, \ldots, h .
$$

Since $\left\{\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{h}\right\}$ is a basis, we have

$$
\operatorname{det}\left(\sigma_{\mu}\left(\beta_{\nu}\right)\right)_{\mu, v} \neq 0
$$

Hence we can express $A_{\text {kijv }}$ as a linear combination of the elements $\sigma_{1}\left(\alpha_{k i} \beta_{j}\right), \ldots, \sigma_{h}\left(\alpha_{k i} \beta_{j}\right)$ with coefficients which only depend on the field $k$. Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{dg} A_{k i j \nu} & <c_{1}+\max _{k, i, j, \mu} d g \sigma_{\mu}\left(\alpha_{k i} \beta_{j}\right) \\
& <c_{2}+\max _{k, i} d^{*}\left(\alpha_{k i}\right)=c_{2}+a,
\end{aligned}
$$

where $c_{1}, c_{2}$ are positive constants depending only on $K$.
According to lemma 6.12 the system (6.16.3) has a non-trivial solution in polynomials $C_{i j} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x], i=1, \ldots, s ; j=1, \ldots, h$ such that
(6.16.4) $\quad d g c_{i j}<\frac{\left(c_{2}+a\right) r h}{s h-r h}$.

Now we define
(6.16.5) $\quad \xi_{i}:=\sum_{j=1}^{h} C_{i j} \beta_{j}, \quad i=1, \ldots, s$.

Then the $\xi_{i}$ are algebraic integers of $K$, not all zero, and from (6.16.5) and (6.16.2) we have

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{s} \alpha_{k i} \xi_{i}=\sum_{v=1}^{h} \sum_{i=1}^{s} \sum_{j=1}^{h} A_{k i j v} C_{i j} \beta_{v}
$$

But since $\sum_{i=1}^{S} \sum_{j=1}^{h} A_{k i j v} C_{i j}=0, \quad k=1, \ldots, r ; v=1, \ldots, h$,
the s-tuple $\left(\xi_{1}, \ldots, \xi_{s}\right)$ is a non-trivial solution of (6.16.1). Furthermore it follows from (6.16.5) and (6.16.4) that

$$
d^{*}\left(\xi_{i}\right) \leq \max _{i, j}\left(d g c_{i j}+d^{*}\left(\beta_{j}\right)\right)<\frac{\left(a+c_{2}\right) r}{s-r}+c_{3}<\frac{a r+c s}{s-r}
$$

where the positive constant $c$ depends only on $K . \quad \square$
7. SUMMARY OF KNOWN RESULTS ON TRANSCENDENCE IN $\Phi$

As already mentioned in chapter $I$, the functions $\psi, \lambda: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$ and the quantity $\xi \in \Phi$ were introduced by L. CARLITZ in 1935. In 1941 L.I. WADE proved the transcendence over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ of $\psi(\alpha)$ for every non-zero algebraic element $\alpha \in \Phi$. From $\psi(\xi)=0$ it follows that $\xi$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ and since $\lambda:\left\{t \in \Phi \left\lvert\, d g t<\frac{q}{q-1}\right.\right\} \rightarrow \Phi$ is defined as the inverse of $\psi$ we also immediately see that $\lambda(\alpha)$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ for every nonzero algebraic $\alpha \in \Phi$ with $d g \alpha<\frac{q}{q-1}$.

In the same article Wade remarked that he was not able to prove the transcendence of

$$
\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} c_{j} \frac{\alpha^{q^{j}}}{F_{j}}, \quad c_{j} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}, \quad j=1,2, \ldots,
$$

where an infinite number of $c_{j}$ is non-zero and where $\alpha$ is an arbitrary algebraic element of $\Phi$. However, the transcendence in a special case, namely for $\alpha \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}] \backslash\{0\}$, follows from the following theorem which wade proved in the same article.
7.1. THEOREM. (WADE (1941). Let the sequence $\left\{\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{k}}\right\}_{\mathrm{k}=0}^{\infty}$ satisfy the conditions:
(i) $B_{k} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}], \mathrm{k}=0,1,2, \ldots$,
(ii) infinitely many of the $\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{k}}$ are non-zero,
(iii) there exist a $k_{0} \in \mathbb{N}$ and a sequence $\left\{\mathrm{c}_{\mathrm{k}}\right\}_{\mathrm{k}=\mathrm{k}_{0}}^{\infty}$ of real numbers with $\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} C_{k}=\infty$ such that
(7.1.1) $\quad d g B_{k} \leq k(q-1) q^{k-1}-c_{k} q^{k-1}, \quad k>k_{0}$.

Then

$$
\sum_{\mathrm{k}=0}^{\infty} \frac{\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{k}}}{\mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{k}}}
$$

is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$.
All proofs in Wade's article follow the same line. To illustrate this method we shall prove theorem 7.1.
Proof of theorem 7.1. Suppose $\gamma=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{B_{k}}{F_{k}}$ is algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ of degree $n$. According to lemma 6.4, $\gamma$ is a zero of a linear polynomial $f$ of degree $q^{n}$ :

$$
f(t):=\sum_{j=\ell}^{n} A_{j} t^{q^{j}}, \quad A_{j} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x], \quad j=\ell, \ldots, n ; A_{\ell} \neq 0 ;
$$

i.e.
(7.1.2) $\quad 0=\sum_{j=\ell}^{n} A_{j} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{B_{k}^{q^{j}}}{F_{k}^{j}}=\sum_{i=\ell}^{\infty} \frac{D_{i}}{F_{i}}$,
where

$$
D_{i}:=\sum_{j=\ell}^{\min (n, i)} \frac{A_{j} B_{i-j}^{q^{j}} F_{i}}{F_{i-j}^{q^{j}}}
$$

From remark $2.2(a)$ we see that $D_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$.
For $m \geq \ell$ a "multiplier" $M_{m} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ will be defined in such a way
that

$$
M_{m} \sum_{i=\ell}^{\infty} \frac{D_{i}}{F_{i}}
$$

can be split up into two parts

$$
I:=\sum_{i=\ell}^{m} \frac{M_{m} D_{i}}{F_{i}}
$$

and

$$
Q:=\sum_{i=m+1}^{\infty} \frac{M_{m} D_{i}}{F_{i}},
$$

such that
(i) $I \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$;
(ii) every sum of $Q$ has valuation less than zero if $m$ is chosen large enough.

In our case, (7.1.2), $F_{m}$ will do as such a multiplier. Using (7.1.2) we have

$$
\text { (7.1.3) } \quad I+Q=0
$$

From $I \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ we have either $d g I \geq 0$ or $I=0$. But from (7.1.1) we can deduce that $d g Q<0$ and in view of (7.1.3) we conclude that $I=0$. It now remains to prove that for $m$ chosen sufficiently large this leads to a contradiction. We have

$$
\sum_{i=\ell}^{m} \frac{F_{m}}{F_{i}} D_{i}=0, \quad m \geq m_{0}-1
$$

This yields

$$
D_{m}+\frac{F_{m}}{F_{m-1}} \sum_{i=\ell}^{m-1} \frac{F_{m-1}}{F_{i}} D_{i}=0, \quad m \geq m_{0}-1
$$

and hence $D_{m}=0, m \geq m_{0}$. Recalling the definition of $D_{m}$ we have
(7.1.4) $\quad \sum_{j=\ell}^{n} A A_{j}^{B_{m-j}^{q^{j}}} \frac{F_{m-j}^{q}}{q^{j}}=0, \quad m \geq m_{0}$.

We proceed by induction. From remark 2.2a it follows that

$$
\sum_{j=\ell+1}^{n} A_{j} B_{m_{0}^{q}}^{q^{j}} \frac{F_{m_{0}}^{q^{\ell+1}-1}}{F_{m_{0}-j}^{q^{j}}} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{[x]}
$$

Hence by (7.1.4)

$$
{ }^{A}{ }_{\ell}{\underset{m}{\mathrm{~m}_{0}}}_{\mathrm{q}}^{\ell}-\frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{m}_{0}-\ell-1}^{\ell+1}}{\mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{m}_{0}^{l}-\ell}^{\ell}} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{x}]
$$

Suppose that

Then it follows from (7.1.4) with $m=m_{0}+k$ that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{l} l^{\frac{q^{k+1}-1}{q-1}} \frac{B_{m_{0}}^{q^{\ell}}}{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{m}_{0}}^{\mathrm{q}}+\mathrm{k}-\ell} \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{m}_{0}-\ell-1}^{\mathrm{q}^{k+\ell+1}}+
\end{aligned}
$$

which, by the induction hypothesis, yields (7.1.5) with $k=k$. Since $\left\{B_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$ contains infinitely many non-zero elements, we have infinitely often

$$
\frac{q^{k+1}-1}{q-1} d g A^{A}{ }^{2}+q^{\ell} d g B_{m_{0}+k-\ell}-(k+1) q^{m_{0}+k} \geq 0,
$$

which for large $k$ contradicts (7.1.1). $\square$
The transcendence of the special element $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{x^{k}-\mathrm{x}}=\sum_{\mathrm{k}=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}-1}^{\mathrm{q}}}{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}}}$ does not follow from theorem 7.1, but using its special character and chosing the right multiplier, Wade proved its transcendence in theorem 4.1 of his article from 1941. By the same method he proved in 1943/44 the following three transcendence results for certain elements of $\Phi$.
7.2. THEOREM. For $\mathrm{n} \in \mathbf{N}$ the element

$$
\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{L_{k}^{n}}
$$

is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$.
PROOF. See WADE (1943), §4. $\square$
7.3. THEOREM. Let $\mathrm{G} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}], \mathrm{dg} \mathrm{G}>0$ and $\mathrm{n} \in \mathbb{N}, \mathrm{n}>1$. Then

$$
\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{G^{n^{k}}}
$$

is algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ if $\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{s}}, \mathrm{s} \in \mathbb{I}$ and transcendental otherwise.

PROOF. See WADE (1944), th. $1 . \square$
7.4. THEOREM. Let $\mathrm{G} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}], \mathrm{dg} \mathrm{G}>0$ and $\mathrm{n} \in \mathbb{N}, \mathrm{n}>1$. Then

$$
\sum_{\mathrm{k}=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\mathrm{G}^{\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{n}}}}
$$

is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$.
PROOF. See WADE (1944), th. 2.

The theorems 7.1 and 7.3 were generalized by S.M. SPENCER jr, (1952). His proofs are based on the principle sketched in the proof of theorem 7.1.

Spencer's generalisation of th.7.1 consists of replacing the sequence $\left\{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}}\right\}_{\mathrm{k}=0}^{\infty}$ by a sequence $\left\{\mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{k}}\right\}_{\mathrm{k}=0}^{\infty}$ of elements of $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}]$ which satisfy the following two conditions:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{k}+1}}{{ }_{G^{\mathrm{q}}}} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{x}], \quad \mathrm{k} \geq 0,  \tag{i}\\
& \lim _{\mathrm{k} \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{k}}}{\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{k}}}=\infty . \tag{ii}
\end{align*}
$$

See SPENCER (1952), theorem 4.
The generalisation of theorem 7.3 reads:
7.5. THEOREM. Let the sequence $\left\{G_{k}\right\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$ satisfy the two conditions:

$$
G_{k} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}], \quad \mathrm{k} \geq 0
$$

and for some $\mathrm{k}_{0}, \mathrm{dg} \mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{k}_{0}}>0$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{G_{k+1}}{G_{k}} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x], \quad k \geq 0 \tag{ii}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $\left\{e_{k}\right\}_{k=0}^{\infty}, e_{k} \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfy
(iii)

$$
e_{k} \mid e_{k+1}, \quad k \geq 0
$$

(iv) $\quad \mathrm{p} \nmid \frac{e_{k+1}}{e_{k}}, \quad k \geq 0$.

Then $\sum_{\mathrm{k}=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{k}}^{\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{k}}}}$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$.
PROOF. See SPENCER (1952), th.7. Compare the case $G_{k}=G$ and $e_{k}=n^{k}$ with theorem 7.3.

Furthermore we mention that in the same paper by Spencer the following result is proved.
7.6. THEOREM. Let the entire function $f: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$ be given by

$$
f(t):=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_{n} t^{n}, \quad b_{n} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}(x)
$$

and $\mathrm{b}_{\mathrm{n}} \neq 0$ for infinitely many n . Let $\mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{n}}$ denote a denominator for $\mathrm{b}_{0}, \mathrm{~b}_{1}, \ldots, \mathrm{~b}_{\mathrm{n}}$ of smallest valuation. Let $\alpha \in \Phi \backslash\{0\}$ be algebraic and $\mathrm{dg} \alpha \leq 0$. If there exist an increasing sequence $\mathrm{n}_{1}, \mathrm{n}_{2}, \ldots$ of natural numbers and an increasing sequence $\mathrm{k}_{1}, \mathrm{k}_{2}, \ldots$ of positive real numbers with $\lim _{i \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{k}_{\mathbf{i}}=\infty$, such that
(7.6.1) $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text { (i) dg } b_{v}<-k_{i} d g G_{n_{i}}, \quad i=1,2, \ldots ; v \geq n_{i}, \\ \text { (ii) } \sum_{v=n_{i}+1}^{\infty} b_{v} \alpha^{\nu} \neq 0, \quad i=1,2, \ldots,\end{array}\right.$
then $\mathrm{f}(\alpha)$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$.
PROOF. See S.M. SPENCER (1952), th. 1 or section 9 of this thesis. In Spencer's article the theorem is proved only in the case that $f$ is defined on $F$, but the proof also works in case $f$ is defined for all $t \in \Phi$. $\square$
N.B. Spencer does not mention the condition $d g \alpha \leq 0$ but it is not clear how his proof works without it.

In 1946 L.I. WADE proved an analogue of the Gelfond-Schneider theorem using the Siegel-Schneider method. We shall formulate this theorem and give a sketch of the proof. In 1971 and 1973 the same method was used to obtain transcendence results for a wider class of functions. See J.M. GEIJSEL $(1971,1973)$ or chapter IV.
7.7. THEOREM. (WADE 1946) Let $\alpha, \beta \in \Phi$. If $\alpha \neq 0$, dg $\alpha<\frac{q}{q-1}$ and $\beta \notin \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$, then at least one of the three quantities $\alpha, \beta, \psi(\beta \lambda(\alpha))$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$.

PROOF. Suppose $\alpha, \beta$ and $\psi(\beta \lambda(\alpha))$ are algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. For some $e \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ the elements $\alpha \mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{e}}, \beta \mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{e}}, \psi \mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{e}}(\beta \lambda(\alpha))$ generate a separable algebraic extension $K$ of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$.

Let $\Gamma \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{q}[x]$ be such that $\Gamma \alpha^{q^{e}}, \Gamma \beta^{q^{e}}$ and $\Gamma \psi^{q^{e}}(\beta \lambda(\alpha))$ are algebraic integers of K .

The proof, that the assumption on $\alpha, \beta$ and $\psi(\beta \lambda(\alpha))$ leads to a contradiction, consists of three steps.

Step I: construction of an auxiliary function $L$ with many prescribed zeros. Step II: proof with the aid of the Maximum Modulus Theorem that $L$ has infinitely many distinct zeros of a certain type.
Step III: Application of the Product Formula for Entire Functions from which the desired contradiction follows.
I. The natural numbers $k$, $\ell$ with $\ell>3 k$ will be chosen later. Set
$\mathrm{m}:=\mathrm{k}+\ell-1$. Define the entire function $\mathrm{L}: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$ by

$$
L(t):=\sum_{j=0}^{q^{2 \ell}-1} \sum_{i=0}^{2 k}-1 x_{i j} t^{j q^{e}} \psi^{i q^{e}}(\lambda(\alpha) t)
$$

where the algebraic integers $X_{i j}$ of $K$ will be determined in such a way that $L(A+B B)=0$ for all $A, B \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ with $d g A<m, d g B<m$. The condition

$$
\Gamma^{2 \ell}+q^{2 k+m} L(A+\beta B)=0, \quad d g A, \quad d g B<m
$$

on $L$ implies a system of at most $q^{2 m}$ linear equations in the $q^{2(k+\ell)}$ variables $X_{i j}$ with integral algebraic coefficients (apply th. $2.11(a)$,
th.2.13 and th.2.5). Using that

$$
\operatorname{dg} \frac{\psi_{\mu}(A)}{F_{\mu}}=(\operatorname{dg} A-\mu) q^{\mu} \leq q^{\operatorname{dgA}-1}
$$

(see remark 2.6) we find that the valuation of these coefficients and also of their conjugates is less than $q^{2 \ell+e}\left(m+c_{1}\right)$, where the rational constant $c_{1}>0$ does not depend on $k$ and $\ell$. According to lemma 6.16 we can determine the $X_{i j}$ in such a way that not all of them are zero and that
(7.7.1) $\quad d g x_{i j}<\left(m+c_{2}\right) q^{2 \ell+e}$,
where $c_{2}>0$ is independent of $k$ and $\ell$.
From now on we suppose that the $\mathrm{X}_{\mathrm{ij}}$ are fixed accordingly.
II. For $\mu \geq \mathrm{m}$ we define

$$
\begin{aligned}
& B(\mu):=\left\{A+B B \mid A, B \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X] ; A \text { and } B\right. \text { not both zero; } \\
&d g A<\mu, d g B<\mu\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $B:=U_{\mu=m}^{\infty} B(\mu)$. The second step now consists of proving by induction that $L$ vanishes on $B$. We have constructed $L$ such that $L(t)=0$ for $t \in B(m)$. So it is sufficient to prove that

$$
(t \in B(\mu) \Rightarrow L(t)=0) \Rightarrow(t \in B(\mu+1) \Rightarrow L(t)=0)
$$

Since $\beta \notin \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$, all the $A+\beta B$ are different. Hence the number of elements of $B(\mu)$ is $q^{2 \mu}-1$.

Let $t_{0} \in B(\mu+1) \backslash B(\mu)$. If $\ell$ is chosen large enough, then $d g t_{0} \leq \mu+d^{*}(\beta)<2 \mu$. By assumption

$$
L(t) \prod_{a \in B(\mu)}(t-a)^{-1}
$$

is an entire function. Hence we can apply the Maximum Modulus Principle (th.5.16) and obtain

$$
d g L\left(t_{0}\right)-\sum_{a \in B(\mu)} d g\left(t_{0}-a\right) \leq \max _{d g t=2 \mu} d g L(t)-2 \mu\left(q^{2 \mu}-1\right) .
$$

From the definitions of $L$ and $\psi$ and inequality (7.7.1) it follows that
(7.7.2) $\max _{\operatorname{dgt}=2 \mu} \mathrm{dg} L(t)<\left(2 \mu+m+c_{2}\right) q^{2 \ell+e}+c_{3} q^{2 k+e+2 \mu}$,
where $c_{3}>0$ is independent of $k$ and $\ell$. Now put

$$
\eta:=\mu-k+1
$$

then $\eta \geq \ell$ and

$$
d g L\left(t_{0}\right) \leq q^{2 \eta+e}\left\{\mu\left(3-q^{2 k-e-2}+\frac{1}{q^{2 \eta+e}}\right)+c_{2}+c_{3} q^{4 k}+d^{*}(\beta) q^{2 k}\right\}
$$

From the choice of $t_{0}$ and the definitions of $L$ and $\Gamma$ it follows that

$$
\Gamma^{q^{2 \eta}+q^{2 k+\mu}} L\left(t_{0}\right)
$$

is an algebraic integer of $K$. Therefore its norm is an element of $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}]$ with
(7.7.3) $\quad d g N_{K \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)}\left(\Gamma^{q^{2 \eta}+q^{2 k+\mu}} L\left(t_{0}\right)\right) \leq h q^{2 \eta+e}\left\{\mu\left(4-q^{2 k-e-2}\right)+c_{4} q^{4 k}\right\}$, where $c_{4}>0$ and $h:=\left[K: \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)\right]$. Now first choose $k$ such that $4-q^{2 k-e^{4}-2}<0$. Then take $\ell$ so large that
(i) $d^{*}(\beta)<\ell$ (this was required in the calculation above),
(ii) $\ell>3 \mathrm{k}$ (as was assumed throughout the proof),
(iii) $\mu\left(4-q^{2 k-e-2}\right) \leq m\left(4-q^{2 k-e-2}\right)=(k+\ell-1)\left(4-q^{2 k-e-2}\right)<-c_{4} q^{4 k}$.
III. Now k and $\ell$ are fixed. According to the Product Formula for Entire Functions, corollary 5.24, we have

$$
L(t)=\gamma t^{\rho} \prod_{a \in B(\mu)}\left(1-\frac{t}{a}\right) \prod_{b \in R^{*} \backslash B(\mu)}\left(1-\frac{t}{b}\right)
$$

where $\rho \in \mathbb{N}^{0}, \gamma \in \Phi, \gamma \neq 0, R^{*}=R \backslash\{0\}$ and $R$ denotes the set of zeros of $L$. Comparing the maximal value on $\{t \mid d g t=2 \mu\}$ and the value in $t=0$ of the last product, the Maximum Modulus Principle yields
(7.7.4) $\quad \max _{d g t=2 \mu} d g \prod_{b \in R^{*} \backslash B(\mu)}\left(1-\frac{t}{b}\right) \geq 0$.

Further we write

$$
\prod_{a \in B(\mu)}\left(1-\frac{t}{a}\right)=\frac{\prod_{a \in B(\mu)}(a-t)}{\prod_{a \in B(\mu)}^{a}} .
$$

Then it follows from (7.7.4) that
(7.7.5) $\max _{d g t=2 \mu} d g L(t) \geq d g \gamma+2 \mu \rho+2 \mu\left(q^{2 \mu}-1\right)-\left(\mu+d^{*}(\beta)\right)\left(q^{2 \mu}-1\right)$.

For $\mu$ large enough (7.7.2) and (7.7.5) are contradictory. $\square$

In 1949 K . MAHLER proved an analogue of the well-known theorem of Liouville on the approximation of algebraic numbers by rational numbers for certain function fields. His proof also works for our field $\Phi$. Therefore we have, in our notation,
7.8. THEOREM. (MAHLER) If $\alpha \dot{\epsilon} \Phi$ is algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X}$ ) of degree $\mathrm{n} \geq 2$, then there exists a $c \in \mathbb{R}$ such that for all pairs $P, Q \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}]$ with $Q \neq 0$ we have

$$
\mathrm{dg}\left(\alpha-\frac{P}{Q}\right) \geq c-n d g Q
$$

PROOF. See MAHLER (1949), th. 1.

In case the characteristic of the function field is 0, Mahler's theorem does not give the best possible result [see B.P. GILL (1930)]. Mahler gave an example from which it follows that in case the ground field has characteristic p, theorem 7.8 is sharpest.
7.9. THEOREM. Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be the element

$$
\alpha:=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{x^{p^{i}}}
$$

then $\alpha$ is algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{x})$ of degree $\mathrm{p} \geq 2$ and there exist an infinite sequence of relatively prime polynomials $A_{m}, B_{m} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}]$ with $\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{m}} \neq 0$ such that

$$
\operatorname{dg} \quad\left(\alpha-\frac{A_{m}}{B_{m}}\right)=-p d g B_{m}
$$

where $\lim _{m \rightarrow \infty} d g B_{m}=\infty$.

PROOF. See MAHLER (1949), th. 2 . Note that $\alpha$ is a root of the equation $\overline{t^{p}-t}+\frac{1}{x}=0 . \quad \square$
7.10. REMARK. In the same paper Mahler raised the question whether the result of theorem 7.8 still gives the best possible result for elements $\alpha$ of the form
(7.10.1)

$$
\alpha=\sum_{i=-m}^{\infty} a_{i} x^{-i}, \quad m \in \mathbb{Z}, a_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}
$$

which are algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ of degree at least 2 and at most $\mathrm{p}-1$.
Recently L.E. BAUM and M.M. SWEET (1976) proved the following statement:
"There exists a unique element $\alpha$ of the form (7.10.1) with $q=2$ that satisfies the irreducible equation

$$
t^{2^{n}+1}+x t+1=0, \quad n \geq 1
$$

For this $\alpha$ there exists an infinite sequence $A_{m}, B_{m} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$ such that

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left(A_{m}, B_{m}\right)=1, B_{m} \neq 0, \lim _{m \rightarrow \infty} d g B_{m}=\infty \text { and such that } \\
d g\left(\alpha-\frac{A_{m}}{B_{m}}\right)=-1-\left(2^{n}+1\right) d g B_{m} " .
\end{gathered}
$$

This contradicts an earlier assertion of J.V. ARMITAGE (1968) to the effect that a Thue-Siegel-Roth theorem should hold for algebraic elements in $\Phi$ which are not contained in a cyclic extension of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(x)$ of degree $p^{n}$ ( $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ). Armitage's assertion was earlier showed to be false by C.F. OSGOOD (1975).

Theorem 7.8 enables us to construct a new type of transcendental elements of $\Phi$; this will be done in Chapter III.

Finally we mention that $P$. BUNDSCHUH in 1974 gave an analogue of Mahler's, classification of transcendental numbers in $S-, T-$ and $U-n u m b e r s$ and that he introduces a notion of transcendence measure in $\Phi$. (See Séminaire Delange-Pisot-Poitou 1974/75, §3.)

## ON THE TRANSCENDENCE OF CERTAIN POWER SERIES OF ALGEBRAIC ELEMENTS OF $\Phi$

## 8. LIOUVILLE NUMBERS

As already mentioned in chapter II, section 7, Mahler's analogon of the theorem of Liouville (see th.7.8) enables one to construct transcendental elements of $\Phi$.
8.1. DEFINITION. An element $\eta \in \Phi$ is called a Liouville number if for every $m \in \mathbb{I N}^{0}$ there exist elements $A_{m}, B_{m} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}]$, with $\left(A_{m}, B_{m}\right)=1, d g B_{m}>0$ and $A_{m} / B_{m} \neq \eta$ such that
(8.1.1) $\quad d g\left(\eta-\frac{A_{m}}{B_{m}}\right)<-m d g B_{m}$.
8.2. THEOREM. Every Liouville number $\eta \in \Phi$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. PROOF. Suppose $\eta$ is algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ of degree $n$. If $n=1$, then there exist $A, B \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ with $(A, B)=1$ such that $\eta=\frac{A}{B}$. For all $C, D \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ $\frac{C}{D} \neq \frac{A}{B}$ and $\operatorname{dg} D \xrightarrow{>} d g B$ we have
(8.2.1) $d g\left(\eta-\frac{C}{D}\right) \geq-d g D-d g B \geq-2 d g$ D.

For $m>2$ the relations (8.1.1) and (8.2.1) are contradictory.
Now suppose $n \geq 2$. According to theorem 7.8 there exists a $c \in \mathbb{R}$ such that for all pairs $P, Q \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ with $Q \neq 0$

$$
d g\left(n-\frac{p}{Q}\right)>c-n d g Q>-m d g Q
$$

for $m$ sufficiently large. This contradicts (8.1.1).
8.3. EXAMPLES. (i) Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be defined by

$$
\alpha:=\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{c_{j}}{x^{j!}},
$$

where $c_{j} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}, c_{j} \neq 0$ for infinitely many $j$. For $m \in \mathbb{N}$ we define

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mu:=\max _{1 \leq j \leq m}\left\{j \mid c_{j} \neq 0\right\}, \\
& A_{m}:=x^{\mu!} \sum_{j=1}^{\mu} \frac{c_{j}}{x^{j!}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{m}}:=\mathrm{x}^{\mu!} .
$$

Then $A_{m}, B_{m} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X],\left(A_{m}, B_{m}\right)=1, d g B_{m}=\mu!>0$ and

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(\alpha-\frac{A_{m}}{B_{m}}\right) \leq-(m+1): \leq-(m+1) d g B_{m}
$$

Hence $\alpha$ is a Liouville number.
(ii) Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be defined by

$$
\alpha:=\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{c_{j}}{F_{q}^{j}}
$$

where $c_{j} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}, c_{j} \neq 0$ for infinitely many $j$. For $m \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ we define

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mu:=\max _{0 \leq j \leq m}\left\{j \mid c_{j} \neq 0\right\} \\
& A_{m}:=F_{q^{\mu}} \sum_{j=0}^{\mu} \frac{c_{j}}{F_{q^{j}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{m}}:=\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{q}^{\mu}}
$$

Then $A_{m}, B_{m} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x],\left(A_{m}, B_{m}\right)=1, d g B_{m}=q^{\mu} \cdot q^{q^{\mu}}>0$ and

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(\alpha-\frac{A_{m}}{B_{m}}\right) \leq-q^{m+1} \cdot q^{q^{m+1}}<-m d g B_{m}
$$

Hence $\alpha$ is a Liouville number.

## 9. TRANSCENDENTAL VALUES OF GAP-SERIES

In 1972 P.L. Cijsouw proved that if a certain gap-condition for a power series $S$ with algebraic coefficients is fulfilled, then $S$ assumes transcendental values for non-zero algebraic arguments. For details and a proof we refer to CIJSOUW (1972), th.1.11 or CIJSOUW \& TIJDEMAN (1973). In this section we shall give an analogue of Cijsouw's theorem for the field $\Phi$.
9.1. DEFINITION. Let $P \in \Phi[t]$ be given by

$$
P(t):=a_{n} t^{n}+a_{n-1} t^{n-1}+\ldots+a_{1} t+a_{0}
$$

Then the height of the polynomial P , notation $\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{P})$, is defined as the maximum of the valuations of the coefficients of $P$, i.e.

$$
H(P):=\max _{0 \leq i \leq n} d g a_{i} .
$$

If $\alpha \in \Phi$ is algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$, then the height of $\alpha$, notation $h(\alpha)$, is defined as the height of the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$.

In the next two lemmas we shall give a lower and an upper bound for $h(\alpha)$ in terms of suitable characteristics of $\alpha$.
9.2. LEMMA. Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$, then
(9.2.1) $\quad \operatorname{dg} \alpha \leq h(\alpha)$.

PROOF. Since $h(\alpha) \geq 0$, we restrict ourselves to the case $d g \alpha \geq 0$. Let $P \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}][t]$, given by

$$
P(t):=A_{n} t^{n}+A_{n-1} t^{n-1}+\ldots+A_{1} t+A_{0}
$$

be the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$. Then

$$
A_{n} \alpha^{n}=-A_{0}-A_{1} \alpha-\ldots-A_{n-1} \alpha^{n-1}
$$

## 3.4

Hence, using $d g \alpha \geq 0$, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{ndg} \alpha \leq \mathrm{ndg} \alpha+d g A_{\mathrm{n}} & \leq \max _{0 \leq i \leq n-1}\left(i d g \alpha+d g A_{i}\right) \\
& \leq(n-1) d g \alpha+h(\alpha),
\end{aligned}
$$

from which the inequality (9.2.1) follows.
9.3. LEMMA. Let $\alpha$ be algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ of degree n and let M be a denominator for $\alpha$. Then

$$
h(\alpha) \leq n\left(d g M+d^{*}(\alpha)\right) .
$$

PROOF. Let $Q \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X][t]$ be the minimal polynomial for $\alpha$, given by

$$
Q(t):=A_{n} t^{n}+A_{n-1} t^{n-1}+\ldots+A_{1} t+A_{0}
$$

Let $\alpha_{1}=\alpha, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}$ be the conjugates of $\alpha$, then

$$
Q(t)=A_{n} \prod_{i=1}^{n}\left(t-\alpha_{i}\right)
$$

Now $A_{j} / A_{n}, j=0,1, \ldots, n-1$ are the elementary symmetric polynomials in $\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}$, disregarding the sign. Hence
(9.3.1) $\quad \operatorname{dg} \frac{A_{j}}{A_{n}} \leq \max _{\substack{1 \leq i \leq n \\ 1 \leq v \leq n-j}} d g\left(\alpha_{i_{1}} \alpha_{i_{2}} \ldots \alpha_{i_{j}}\right) \leq n d^{*}(\alpha), \quad j=0,1, \ldots, n-1$.

Since $M \alpha$ is an algebraic integer, there exists a polynomial $P \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x][t]$, given by

$$
P(t):=(M t)^{n}+B_{n-1}(M t)^{n-1}+\ldots+B_{1}(M t)+B_{0}
$$

for which $P(\alpha)=0$. Since $Q$ is the minimal polynomial of $\alpha, P$ must be a multiple (in $\mathbb{F}_{q}[x][t]$ ) of $Q$ and therefore

$$
C A_{n}=M^{n}
$$

for some $C \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x], C \neq 0$. Hence
(9.3.2) $\quad d g A_{n} \leq d g A_{n}+d g C=n d g M$.

Now the lemma follows from (9.3.1) and (9.3.2). $\square$
9.4. LEMMA. Let $\mathrm{P}_{1}, \mathrm{P}_{2} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}][\mathrm{t}]$ be polynomials of degree $\mathrm{N}_{1}, \mathrm{~N}_{2}$ in t and height $\mathrm{H}_{1}, \mathrm{H}_{2}$ respectively. If there exists an element $\omega \in \Phi$ such that
(9.4.1) $\max \left(\operatorname{dgP}_{1}(\omega), \operatorname{dgP}_{2}(\omega)\right)<-\left(\mathrm{N}_{1} \mathrm{H}_{2}+\mathrm{N}_{2} \mathrm{H}_{1}\right)$,
then $\mathrm{P}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{P}_{2}$ have a common zero.

PROOF. Let

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P_{1}(t):=A_{N_{1}} t^{N_{1}}+A_{N_{1}-1} t^{N_{1}-1}+\ldots+A_{1} t+A_{0}, \quad A_{N_{1}} \neq 0, \\
& P_{2}(t):=B_{N_{2}} t^{N_{2}}+B_{N_{2}-1} t^{N_{2}-1}+\ldots+B_{1} t+B_{0}, \quad B_{N_{2}} \neq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

and let det $R$ be the resultant of $P_{1}$ and $P_{2}$ :


Then it is well-known, see e.g. VAN DER WAERDEN $\S 30$, that $\operatorname{det} R=0$ if and only if $P_{1}$ and $P_{2}$ have a common zero. The coefficients of $P_{1}$ and $P_{2}$ are elements of $\mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ and hence $\operatorname{det} R \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$, i.e. $\operatorname{det} R=0$ or $\operatorname{dg}(\operatorname{det} R) \geq 0$. So if we show that the condition (9.4.1) implies $\operatorname{dg}(\operatorname{det} R)<0$, the lemma will be proved.
3.6

First suppose dg $\omega \leq 0$. Multiply the $i^{\text {th }}$ column of $R$ by $\omega^{N_{1}+N_{2}-i}$ and add the result to the last column, $i=1,2, \ldots, N_{1}+N_{2}-1$. Then divide the the result by

$$
P(\omega):=\left\{\begin{array}{lll}
P_{1}(\omega) & \text { if } & \operatorname{dg} P_{1}(\omega) \geq d g P_{2}(\omega), \\
P_{2}(\omega) & \text { if } & d g P_{1}(\omega)<d g P_{2}(\omega) .
\end{array}\right.
$$

So we obtain

$$
\text { (9.4.3) } \quad R=P(\omega) R^{\prime} \text {, }
$$

where $R^{\prime}$ is a matrix that is obtained from $R$ by replacing the last column by a new one in which all elements have valuation at most zero. Every term in the expansion of det $R^{\prime}$ is the product of one element of $\Phi$ with valuation at most zero, at most $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ elements from the set $\left\{\mathrm{A}_{0}, \mathrm{~A}_{1}, \ldots, \mathrm{~A}_{N_{1}}\right\}$ and at most $N_{1}$ elements from the set $\left\{\mathrm{B}_{0}, \mathrm{~B}_{1}, \ldots, \mathrm{~B}_{\mathrm{N}_{2}}\right\}$. Hence from (9.4.3) and (9.4.1) we obtain

$$
\operatorname{dg}(\operatorname{det} R) \leq \operatorname{dg} P(\omega)+N_{1} H_{2}+N_{2} H_{1}<0
$$

This proves the lemma in case $\mathrm{dg} \omega \leq 0$.
Now suppose dg $\omega>0$. Define the polynomials $P_{j}^{*}$ by

$$
P_{j}^{*}(t):=t^{N_{j}} P_{j}\left(t^{-1}\right), \quad j=1,2
$$

Then $P_{1}^{*}$ and $P_{2}^{*}$ are of degree $M_{1} \leq N_{1}, M_{2} \leq N_{2}$ and height $H_{1}, H_{2}$ respectively. Since dg $\omega>0$, we have

$$
d g P_{j}^{*}\left(\omega^{-1}\right)=\operatorname{dg} P_{j}(\omega)-N_{j} d g \omega \leq \operatorname{dg} P_{j}(\omega)
$$

and therefore

$$
\max \left(\operatorname{dgP}_{1}^{*}\left(\omega^{-1}\right), \operatorname{dgP}_{2}^{*}\left(\omega^{-1}\right)\right)<-\left(\mathrm{N}_{1} \mathrm{H}_{2}+\mathrm{N}_{2} \mathrm{H}_{1}\right)<-\left(\mathrm{M}_{1} \mathrm{H}_{2}+\mathrm{M}_{2} \mathrm{H}_{1}\right)
$$

Since $d g\left(\omega^{-1}\right)<0$, we have the case considered previously and we conclude that $P_{1}^{*}$ and $P_{2}^{*}$ have a common zero, say $\gamma$. Since $A_{N_{1}} \neq 0$ it follows that
$\gamma \neq 0$. Now $\gamma^{-1}$ is a common zero of $P_{1}$ and $P_{2}$.
9.5. LEMMA. Let $\mathrm{P}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{P}_{2}$ be a polynomials in $\Phi[\mathrm{t}]$ of height $\mathrm{H}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{H}_{2}$ respectively. Then the product $\mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{2}$ has height $\mathrm{H}_{1}+\mathrm{H}_{2}$.
PROOF. Write $P_{1}(t)=A_{N} t^{N}+A_{N-1} t^{N-1}+\ldots+A_{1} t+A_{0}, A_{N} \neq 0$. Define $n_{1}$ by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{dg} A_{n_{1}}=H_{1}, \\
& \operatorname{dg~} A_{n}<H_{1}, \quad n=0,1, \ldots, n_{1}-1
\end{aligned}
$$

Define in a similar way $n_{2}$ for $P_{2}$. Then the coefficient of $t^{n_{1}+n_{2}}$ in $P_{1} P_{2}$ has degree $H_{1}+H_{2}$. Since it is clear that in $P_{1} P_{2}$ no coefficients with a degree greater than $H_{1}+H_{2}$ occur, the lemma is proved.
9.6. LEMMA. Let $\mathrm{P} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}][\mathrm{t}]$ have degree $\mathrm{N} \geq 1$ and height H . Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be algebraic of degree n and height h . Then either $\mathrm{P}(\alpha)=0$ or
(9.6.1) $\quad d g P(\alpha) \geq-(h N+n H)$.

PROOF. First we supppose that $\alpha$ is separable. Let $Q$ denote its minimal
polynomial and let $\sigma_{1}, \sigma_{2}, \ldots, \sigma_{n}$ be the $n \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$-monomorphisms $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)(\alpha) \hookrightarrow \Phi$. Hence the zeros of $Q$ are $\sigma_{j}(\alpha), j=1,2, \ldots, n$. Now if (9.6.1) were not true, we would have

$$
\max \{\operatorname{dg} P(\alpha), \operatorname{dg} Q(\alpha)\}=d g P(\alpha)<-(h N+n H)
$$

Then lemma 9.4 says that $P$ and $Q$ have a common zero, i.e. for some $j \in\{1,2, \ldots, n\}$

$$
0=P\left(\sigma_{j}(\alpha)\right)=\sigma_{j}(P(\alpha))
$$

and hence $P(\alpha)=0$.
Now let $\alpha$ be non-separable. Take $e \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\alpha^{p^{e}}$ is separable. If $Q \in \Phi[t]$, we denote by $Q^{*}$ the polynomial obtained from $Q$ by raising the coefficients of $Q$ to the power $p^{e}$. Clearly, $Q$ and $Q^{*}$ are of the same degree and $H^{*}=p^{e} H$, with the obvious meaning for $H$ and $H^{*}$. Now let $Q \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X][t]$ be the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$. Then $Q^{*}\left(\alpha^{p^{e}}\right)=0$. Hence the

## 3.8

minimal polynomial of $\alpha \mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{e}}$ is a divisor of $Q^{*}$. In view of lemma 9.5 the height of $\alpha^{p^{e}}$ does not exceed $p^{e} h$.

Suppose $P(\alpha) \neq 0$. Then we have

$$
\mathrm{P}^{*}\left(\alpha \mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{e}}\right) \neq 0
$$

Applying the part of the lemma already proved on $P^{*}$ and $\alpha^{p^{e}}$, we find that (9.6.2) $\quad d g P^{*}\left(\alpha^{p^{e}}\right) \geq-\left(p^{e} h N+n p^{e} H\right)$.

The lemma now follows from (9.6.2) and

$$
p^{e} d g P(\alpha)=d g P^{*}\left(\alpha^{p^{e}}\right)
$$

Now we are ready to prove the analogue of Cijsouw's theorem mentioned in the beginning of this section.
9.7. THEOREM. Let $\left\{\alpha_{k}\right\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$ be a sequence of non-zero algebraic elements of $\Phi$. Denote

$$
a_{k}:=\max _{0 \leq i \leq k} d^{*}\left(\alpha_{i}\right)
$$

and

$$
d_{k}:=\left[\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)\left(\alpha_{0}, \alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{k}\right): \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)\right]
$$

Let $M_{k}$ be a denominator for $\alpha_{0}, \alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{k}$. Finally suppose that the power series

$$
S(t):=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{k} t^{n_{k}}
$$

where $\left\{n_{k}\right\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$ is an increasing sequence of non-negative integers, has radius of convergence $\mathrm{R}>-\infty$.

Then, if
(9.7.1) $\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\left(n_{k}+\text { dgM }_{k}+a_{k}\right) d_{k}}{n_{k+1}}=0$,
$S(\theta)$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ for every non-zero algebraic $\theta \in \Phi$ with $\mathrm{dg} \theta<\mathrm{R}$.

PROOF. Let $\theta \neq 0$ be algebraic, $d g \theta<R$ and let $n$ denote the degree of $\theta$. $M$ is a denominator of $\theta$. Put

$$
S_{k}(\theta):=\sum_{i=0}^{k} \alpha_{i} \theta^{n_{i}}
$$

and

$$
r_{k}(\theta):=S(\theta)-S_{k}(\theta), \quad k \in \mathbb{N}^{0}
$$

Now $S_{k}(\theta) \in \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)\left(\alpha_{0}, \alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{k}, \theta\right)$ and therefore $S_{k}(\theta)$ is algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ of degree $s_{k} \leq n d_{k}$. Denote its height by $h_{k}$. Since $M_{k} M^{n_{k}}$ is a denominator for $S_{k}(\theta)$, we obtain from lemma 9.3 and from lemma 6.15

$$
\begin{aligned}
h_{k} & \leq n d_{k}\left\{d g\left(M_{k} M^{n_{k}}\right)+d^{*}\left(S_{k}(\theta)\right)\right\} \\
& \leq n d_{k}\left\{d g M_{k}+n_{k} d g M+a_{k}+n_{k} d^{*}(\theta)\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $P \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X][t]$ be an arbitrary but fixed polynomial of degree $N \geq 1$ and height $H$. Let $\beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{m}$ be the different zeros of $P$ in $\Phi$ and suppose $m \geq 2$. Then, by the convergence of $\left\{S_{k}(\theta)\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$, there exists a $k_{1}$ such that for $k>k_{1}$

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(S_{k}(\theta)-S_{k+1}(\theta)\right)<\min _{\substack{1 \leq i, j \leq m \\ i \neq j}} d g\left(\beta_{i}-\beta_{j}\right)
$$

Hence for $k>k_{1}$

$$
P\left(S_{k}(\theta)\right)=0 \Rightarrow P\left(S_{k+1}(\theta)\right) \neq 0
$$

Clearly, this also holds if $P$ has one zero of multiplicity $N$. Consequently there exists an infinite subsequence $\left\{k_{j}\right\}_{j=1}^{\infty}$ of the sequence of natural numbers such that

$$
P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right) \neq 0, \quad j=1,2, \ldots
$$

Now it follows from lemma 9.6 that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{dg} P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right) \geq-\left(h_{k_{j}}{ }^{N+S}{ }_{k_{j}}{ }^{H}\right) \\
& \quad \geq-n d_{k_{j}}\left\{\left(d g M_{k_{j}}+n_{k_{j}} d g M+a_{k_{j}}+n_{k_{j}} d^{*}(\theta)\right) N+H\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence
(9.7.2) $\quad \operatorname{dg} P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right) \geq-c_{1} d_{k_{j}}\left(d g M_{k_{j}}+a_{k_{j}}+n_{k_{j}}\right)$,
where $c_{1}>0$ is independent of $j$.
We now estimate $r_{k}(\theta)$ as follows. Choose $\rho \in \mathbb{R}$ with $d g \theta<\rho<R$.
Then since

$$
\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} \sup \frac{d g \alpha_{k}}{n_{k}}=-R,
$$

we have for $k>k_{2}$ the inequality $d g \alpha_{k}<-\rho n_{k}$ and hence

$$
\text { (9.7.3) } \quad d g r_{k}(\theta) \leq \max _{i \geq k+1} n_{i}(d g \theta-\rho)=n_{k+1}(d g \theta-\rho)
$$

Put

$$
P(t)=B_{N} t^{N}+B_{N-1} t^{N-1}+\ldots+B_{1} t+B_{0}
$$

and suppose that $r_{k}(\theta) \neq 0$. Then we may write

$$
P(S(\theta))-P\left(S_{k}(\theta)\right)=r_{k}(\theta) \sum_{i=1}^{N} B_{i} \frac{S^{i}(\theta)-S_{k}^{i}(\theta)}{S(\theta)-S_{k}(\theta)} .
$$

From (9.7.3) it follows that for $k>k_{2}$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{dg}\{P(S(\theta)) & \left.-P\left(S_{k}(\theta)\right)\right\} \leq n_{k+1}(\operatorname{dg} \theta-\rho)+H+ \\
& +\max _{1 \leq i \leq N} \operatorname{dg}\left\{S^{i-1}(\theta)+S^{i-2}(\theta) S_{k}(\theta)+\ldots+S_{k}^{i-1}(\theta)\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Since for $k$ sufficiently large

$$
\max _{1 \leq i \leq N} \max _{0 \leq j \leq i-1} \operatorname{dg~} S^{i-1-j}(\theta) S_{k}^{j}(\theta) \leq(N-1) \max (\operatorname{dgS}(\theta), 0)
$$

we certainly have

$$
\text { (9.7.4) } \quad \operatorname{dg}\left\{P(S(\theta))-P\left(S_{k}(\theta)\right)\right\} \leq-c_{2} n_{k+1}, \quad k>k_{3},
$$

where $c_{2}>0$ is independent of $k$. Clearly, this inequality also holds for the case that $r_{k}(\theta)=0$. The inequalities (9.7.2) and (9.7.4) yield for $k_{j}>\kappa_{3}$

$$
d g \frac{P(S(\theta))-P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right)}{P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right)} \leq-n_{k_{j}+1}\left[c_{2}-c_{1} d_{k_{j}} \frac{\left(d g M_{k_{j}}+a_{k_{j}}+n_{k_{j}}\right)}{n_{k_{j}+1}}\right]
$$

Using condition (9.7.1), we infer that there exists a $\kappa_{4}>\kappa_{3}$ such that

$$
\operatorname{dg} \frac{P(S(\theta))-P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right)}{P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right)}<0, \quad k_{j}>k_{4}
$$

Hence for $\mathrm{k}_{\mathrm{j}}>\mathrm{k}_{4}$

$$
\operatorname{dg} P(S(\theta))=d g\left[P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right)\left\{1+\frac{P(S(\theta))-P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right)}{P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right)}\right\}\right]=\operatorname{dg} P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right)
$$

from which we conclude that $\mathrm{P}(\mathrm{S}(\theta)) \neq 0$. Since P is chosen arbitrarily, we have proved the theorem.
9.8. REMARKS. (i) A power series $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{k} t^{n_{k}}$ is called a gap series, when $\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} n_{k} / n_{k+1}=0$. Thus we infer from the previous theorem that the sum of the gap series

$$
\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} c_{k} \theta^{n_{k}}, c_{k} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}, \quad k=0,1, \ldots
$$

is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ for every non-zero algebraic $\theta$ from $\Phi$ with $\operatorname{dg} \theta<0$.
(ii) In case $R$ is finite, $S(\theta)$ need not be transcendental for algebraic $\theta$ with $d g \theta=R$. For instance, take $n_{k}=k!, \alpha_{k}=x^{k!} / x^{k}$. Then $R=-1$, the conditions of theorem 9.7 are satisfied and we obtain

$$
s\left(x^{-1}\right)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{x^{k}}=(1-x)^{-1}
$$

The following example shows that $S(\theta)$ can be transcendental for an algebraic $\theta$ with $d g \theta=R$; L.I. WADE (1941) proved the transcendence of
$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left(X^{q^{k}}-\mathrm{X}\right)^{-1}$, whereas $\mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{q}} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left(\mathrm{X}^{q^{k}}-\mathrm{x}\right)^{-1}$ can be seen as the value for $\theta=x^{-1}$ of the gap series

$$
S(t)=\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^{q^{k!}} t^{q^{k!}}}{x^{q^{k}}-x}
$$

with radius of convergence $R=-1$.
(iii) If the elements $\alpha_{k}, k \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ belong to a fixed, separable, finite extension of $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$, then the condition in theorem 9.7 can be weakened to

$$
\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n_{k}+\operatorname{dgM}_{k}+a_{k}}{n_{k+1}}=0
$$

(iv) The element

$$
\theta=\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{c_{k}}{x^{k!}}
$$

of example 8.3 is a Liouville number, which can be seen as a certain value of the gap series

$$
S(t)=\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} c_{k} t^{k!},
$$

which converges for $t \in \Phi$ with $d g t<0$. Here $a_{k}=0, d_{k}=1, M_{k}=1$ for $k=1,2, \ldots$ and condition (9.7.1) is satisfied. Now it follows from theorem 9.7 that $\mathrm{S}\left(\mathrm{X}^{-1}\right)$ is transcendental.
with the method used in the proof of theorem 9.7 we can generalize theorem 7.6 to
9.9. THEOREM. Let K be a finite, separable algebraic extension of $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$. Let the entire function $\mathrm{S}: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$ be given by

$$
s(t):=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{n} t^{n}, \quad \alpha_{n} \in K .
$$

Let $M_{n}$ denote a denominator for $\alpha_{0}, \alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}$ with minimal valuation. Let $\theta \in \Phi \backslash\{0\}$ be algebraic.

If there exists a positive, real constant c such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
d^{*}\left(\alpha_{n}\right)+n d^{*}(\theta)<c d g M_{n} \tag{9.9.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

and increasing sequences $\left\{n_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}, n_{k} \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\left\{\lambda_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}, \lambda_{k} \in \mathbb{R}, \lambda_{k}>0$ with $\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} \lambda_{k}=\infty$ such that
(9.9.2) $\begin{cases}\text { (i) } d g \alpha_{n}+n d g \theta<-\lambda_{k} d g M_{n_{k}}, & k=1,2, \ldots ; n>n_{k}, \\ \text { (ii) } \sum_{n=n_{k}+1}^{\infty} \alpha_{n} \theta^{n} \neq 0, & k=1,2, \ldots,\end{cases}$
then $S(\theta)$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$.
PROOF. Since $S$ is entire, we have
(9.9.3) $\quad \lim \sup _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{d g \alpha_{n}}{n}=-\infty$.

If $\alpha_{n} \neq 0$, we have

$$
N_{K \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{q}}(X) \quad\left(M_{n} \alpha_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}] \backslash\{0\}
$$

Put $h:=\left[K: \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)\right]$ and let $\sigma_{1}, \sigma_{2}, \ldots, \sigma_{h}$ denote the $h \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$-monomorphisms $K \hookrightarrow \Phi$. Then, using (9.9.1) and lemma 6.10, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & \leq \operatorname{dg} N_{K \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{q}}(X) \quad\left(M_{n} \alpha_{n}\right)=\prod_{\rho=1}^{h} d g\left(\sigma_{\rho}\left(M_{n} \alpha_{n}\right)\right) \leq \\
& \leq h \operatorname{dg} M_{n}+d g \alpha_{n}+(h-1) d^{*}\left(\alpha_{n}\right)<(h+c(h-1)) d g M_{n}+d g \alpha_{n} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence by (9.9.3) there exists an $\mathrm{n}_{0}$ such that
(9.9.4) $\quad \alpha_{n} \neq 0, n>n_{0} \Rightarrow \frac{d g M_{n}}{n}>1$.

First we remark that we may suppose that

$$
\text { (9.9.5) } \quad \alpha_{n_{k}} \neq 0, \quad k=1,2, \ldots
$$

For suppose that (9.9.5) does not hold a priori. It may occur that we can take subsequences

$$
\left\{n_{k_{j}}\right\}_{j=1}^{\infty} \quad \text { and } \quad\left\{\lambda_{k_{j}}\right\}_{j=1}^{\infty}
$$

such that not only (9.9.2) but also (9.9.5) holds for these subsequences. Then we continue after the appropriate relabelling. But such subsequences need not exist, due to the fact that for some $\mathrm{k}_{0}$

$$
\alpha_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}}=0, \quad \mathrm{k}>\mathrm{k}_{0} .
$$

Then we proceed as follows. From the sequence $\left\{n_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$ we skip $n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{k}$ and those $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}$ for which

$$
\alpha_{n_{k-1}+1}=\alpha_{n_{k-1}}+2=\ldots=\alpha_{n_{k}-1}=\alpha_{n_{k}}=0 .
$$

The remaining sequence of indices we denote again by $\left\{n_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$. Note that in view of (9.9.2) (ii) this sequence $\left\{n_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$ is infinite. From $\left\{\lambda_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$ we take the corresponding subsequence and call it $\left\{\lambda_{\mathrm{k}}\right\}_{\mathrm{k}=1}^{\infty}$ again. Now define

$$
\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}:=\max \left\{\mathrm{n} \mid \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}-1}<\mathrm{n}<\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}, \alpha_{\mathrm{n}} \neq 0\right\}, \quad \mathrm{k}=1,2, \ldots
$$

Then $M_{n_{k}}$ is a denominator for $\alpha_{m_{k}}$, in fact

$$
\operatorname{dg} \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}=\operatorname{dg} \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}^{\prime}}
$$

in view of the minimality condition of $d g M_{n}$.
Finally

$$
\sum_{n=m_{k}+1}^{\infty} \alpha_{n} \theta^{n}=\sum_{n=n_{k+1}}^{\infty} \alpha_{n} \theta^{n}
$$

Hence (9.9.2) holds for the sequence $\left\{m_{k}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$, whereas moreover $\alpha_{m_{k}} \neq 0$.
After these preliminaries we now start with the actual proof. Let
$\theta \neq 0$ be algebraic of degree $s$ and let $m$ be a denominator for $\theta$. Put

$$
S_{k}(\theta):=\sum_{i=0}^{n_{k}} \alpha_{i} \theta^{i}
$$

and

$$
r_{k}(\theta):=S(\theta)-S_{k}(\theta), \quad k \in \mathbb{N}^{0}
$$

Then $S_{k}(\theta) \in K(\theta)$. Denote the height of $S_{k}(\theta)$ by $h_{k}$ and the degree of $S_{k}(\theta)$ by $\mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{k}}$. According to lemma 9.3 and lemma 6.15 we have
(9.9.6) $\quad h_{k} \leq c_{1}\left\{n_{k}+d g M_{n_{k}}\right\}$,
where $c_{1}$ is a positive, real constant, independent of $k$.
Let $P \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x][t]$ be an arbitrary but fixed polynomial of degree $N \geq 1$ and height $H$. Let $\beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{m}$ be the distinct zeros of $P$ in $\Phi$ and suppose that $m \geq 2$. From the convergence of $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{n} \theta^{n}$ it follows that for $k>k_{1}$ and $\nu \in \mathbb{N}$ we have

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(S_{k+v}(\theta)-S_{k}(\theta)\right)<\min _{\substack{1 \leq i, j \leq m \\ i \neq j}} d g\left(\beta_{i}-\beta_{j}\right)
$$

On the other hand we see from (9.9.2)(ii) that for every $k \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$ there exists $a v(k) \in \mathbb{N}$ such that

$$
-\infty<d g\left(S_{k+v(k)}(\theta)-S_{k}(\theta)\right)
$$

Hence
(9.9.7) $P\left(S_{k}(\theta)\right)=0 \Rightarrow P\left(S_{k+v(k)}(\theta)\right) \neq 0$.

Due to (9.9.2)(ii) this is also true in case $P$ has but one zero, of order N. Relation (9.9.7) yields the existence of a sequence $\left\{k_{j}\right\}_{j=1}^{\infty}$ such that
(9.9.8) $P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right) \neq 0, \quad j=1,2, \ldots$.

Now it follows from lemma 9.6 and from (9.9.6) that

$$
\operatorname{dg} P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right) \geq-\left(h_{k_{j}} N+s_{k_{j}} H\right) \geq-c_{2}\left(n_{k_{j}}+d g M_{n_{k}}\right)
$$

where $c_{2}>0$ is independent of $j$.
According to (9.9.2)(i), we have

$$
\operatorname{dg} r_{k}(\theta)<-\lambda_{k} d g M_{n_{k}}
$$

Hence for $k$ sufficiently large
(9.9.10) $d g\left(P(S(\theta))-P\left(S_{k}(\theta)\right)\right) \leq-\lambda_{k} d g M_{n_{k}}+H+(N-1) \max (\operatorname{dgS}(\theta), 0)$ $\leq-c_{3} \lambda_{k} d g M_{n_{k}}$,
where $c_{3}>0$ is independent of $k$.
In view of (9.9.8) and the inequalities (9.9.9) and (9.9.10), we have

$$
d g \frac{P(S(\theta))-P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right)}{P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right)} \leq-n_{k_{j}}\left\{\left(c_{3} \lambda_{k_{j}}-c_{2}\right) \frac{d g M_{n_{k_{j}}}}{n_{k_{j}}}-c_{2}\right\} .
$$

Using (9.9.4) and

$$
\lim _{j \rightarrow \infty} \lambda_{k_{j}}=\infty,
$$

we see that for j sufficiently large

$$
\operatorname{dg} \frac{P(S(\theta))-P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right)}{P\left(S_{k_{j}}(\theta)\right)}<0 .
$$

Hence $P(S(\theta)) \neq 0$. Since $P$ was chosen arbitrarily, we have proved the theorem.

## 10. TRANSCENDENCE MEASURES

Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$. Then for all non-trivial $P \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X][t]$ we have $P(\alpha) \neq 0$. Since the collection $C(N, H)$ of all nontrivial $P \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x][t]$ with degree at most $N$ and height at most $H$ is finite, we have
$\min d g P(\alpha)>-\infty$. $\mathrm{P} \in \mathrm{C}(\mathrm{N}, \mathrm{H})$

Hence there exists an $f: \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}^{0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that $d g P(\alpha)>f(N, H)$ for all $P \in \mathcal{C}(N, H)$.
10.1. DEFINITION. Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. A function $\mathrm{f}: \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}^{0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that
$\operatorname{dg} P(\alpha) \geq f(N, H)$
for all non-trivial $P \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X][t]$ of degree at most $N$ and height at most $H$, is called a transcendence measure of $\alpha$.

In this section we shall give an upper bound for the transcendence measures of all those transcendental $\alpha \in \Phi$ which occur as the limit of some sequence $\left\{\alpha_{j}\right\}_{j=1}^{\infty}$, where all the $\alpha_{j}$ lie in a fixed, finite, separable algebraic extension of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$, see theorem 10.6. Lemma 10.2 and theorem 10.3 may be considered as analogues of well known classical results, generally called after Siegel.
10.2. LEMMA. Let

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{s} a_{k i} x_{i}, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, r
$$

with $a_{k_{i}} \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ be a system of r linear forms in the s variables $\mathrm{x}_{1}, \mathrm{x}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{s}}$ and with $\mathrm{r}<\mathrm{s}$. Let $\mathrm{a} \in \mathbb{Z}$ be such that

$$
\max _{\substack{1 \leq i \leq s \\ 1 \leq k \leq r}} d g \quad a_{k_{i}} \leq a .
$$

Then for all $c \in \mathbb{N}$ there exist $C_{1}, C_{2}, \ldots, C_{s} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}]$, not all zero, such that

$$
\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{i}}<\mathrm{c}
$$

and

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{s} a_{k i} c_{i}\right) \leq a+\left(1-\frac{s}{r}\right) c, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, r
$$

PROOF. Let $M \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ be such that $M a_{k i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X], k=1,2, \ldots, r$; $i=1,2, \ldots, s$.
The cube $K_{0}:=\left\{\left(t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{s}\right) \mid t_{i} \in \Phi, d g t_{i}<c, i=1,2, \ldots, s\right\}$ contains $q^{\text {SC }}$ lattice points $\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{s}\right)$ with $X_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$, $i=1,2, \ldots, s$. If for such lattice points we denote

$$
Y_{k}:=Y_{k}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, X_{s}\right):=\sum_{i=1}^{S} M a_{k i} X_{i}, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, r
$$

and if $m:=d g M$, then $Y_{k} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$ and

$$
d g Y_{k}<m+a+c, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, r .
$$

Hence every lattice point ( $\mathrm{X}_{1}, \ldots, \mathrm{X}_{\mathrm{s}}$ ) of $\mathrm{K}_{0}$ corresponds with one of the $q^{r(m+a+c)}$ lattice points of the cube

$$
k:=\left\{\left(t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{r}\right) \mid t_{i} \in \Phi, d g t_{i}<m+a+c\right\} .
$$

Now choose $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that
(10.2.1) $\quad c \frac{s}{r}-1 \leq n<c \frac{s}{r}$.

We shall distribute the lattice points of the cube $K$ over $q^{r n}$ "cells" in the following way. For every $E \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}]$ with $\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{E}<\mathrm{n}$ we consider the set

$$
A_{E}:=\left\{t \in \Phi \mid d g\left(t-E X^{m+a+c-n}\right)<m+a+c-n\right\}
$$

Suppose that $A_{E_{1}} \cap A_{E_{2}} \neq \varnothing$, then it follows by subtraction that $\mathrm{dg}\left(\mathrm{E}_{1}-\mathrm{E}_{2}\right)<0$, i.e. $\mathrm{E}_{1}=\mathrm{E}_{2}$. Hence the sets $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{E}}$ are disjoint. Furthermore we note that every $G \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{X}]$ with $\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{G}<\mathrm{m}+\mathrm{a}+\mathrm{c}$ belongs to one of these $A_{E}$. Therefore every lattice point of $k$ belongs to just one of the $q^{r n}$ cells of the form

$$
\left\{\left(t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{r}\right) \mid t_{k} \in A_{E_{k}}, d g E_{k}<n, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, r\right\} .
$$

From the construction above we infer that every lattice point ( $\mathrm{x}_{1}, \mathrm{x}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{s}}$ ) of $\mathrm{K}_{0}$ corresponds with a cell of K . It follows from (10.2.1) that

$$
q^{\mathrm{nr}}<q^{\mathrm{CS}}
$$

i.e. the number of cells in $K$ is less than the number of lattice points in $\mathrm{K}_{0}$. Hence there are at least two different lattice points $\left(\mathrm{x}_{1}^{(1)}, \mathrm{x}_{2}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{s}}^{(1)}\right),\left(\mathrm{x}_{1}^{(2)}, \mathrm{x}_{2}^{(2)}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{s}}^{(2)}\right)$ in $\mathrm{K}_{0}$ which correspond with the same cell of $K$, i.e. there exist $E_{1}, E_{2}, \ldots, E_{r} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$ with dg $E_{k}<n$, $\mathrm{k}=1, \ldots, r$, such that

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\operatorname{dg}\left(Y_{k}\left(X_{1}^{(j)}, x_{2}^{(j)}, \ldots, X_{s}^{(j)}\right)-x^{m+a+c-n_{E}}{ }_{k}\right)<m+a+c-n \\
k=1,2, \ldots, r ; j=1,2
\end{array}
$$

If we put $C_{i}=X_{i}^{(1)}-x_{i}^{(2)}, i=1, \ldots, s$, then $C_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$, not all of them are zero, $d g C_{i}<c$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{dg}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{S} a_{k i} C_{i}\right) & =-m+\operatorname{dg}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{S} M a_{k i} C_{i}\right) \leq \\
& \leq a+c-n-1 \leq a+c\left(1-\frac{S}{r}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

10.3. THEOREM. Let $K$ be a finite, separable extension of $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ of degree n. Let

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{s} \alpha_{k i} x_{i}, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, r
$$

with $\alpha_{k i} \in K$ be a system of $r$ linear forms in the $s$ variables $x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{s}$ and let $\mathrm{nr}<\mathrm{s}$. Let $\mathrm{a} \in \mathbb{Z}$ be such that

$$
\max _{\substack{1 \leq i \leq s \\ 1 \leq k \leq r}} d^{*}\left(\alpha_{k i}\right) \leq a
$$

Then for every $c \in \mathbb{N}$ there exist $C_{1}, C_{2}, \ldots, C_{s} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}]$, not all of them zero, such that

$$
\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{i}}<\mathrm{c}, \quad \mathrm{i}=1,2, \ldots, \mathrm{~s}
$$

and

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{S} \alpha_{k i} C_{i}\right) \leq a+b+\left(1-\frac{s}{r n}\right) c
$$

where b is a non-negative constant which depends only on K. More explicitly, if $K=\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})(\theta)$, then we may take $\mathrm{b}=(\mathrm{n}-1) \mathrm{h}(\theta)+\mathrm{n}(\mathrm{n}-1) \mathrm{d}^{*}(\theta)$.

To prove this theorem we need two lemmas which are interesting in themselves. Lemma 10.4 is an analogue of a lemma of N.I. FEL'DMAN (1951; lemma 2, p.54), which is also proved by K. MAHLER (1960) and P. CIJSOUW (1972; lemma 2.7). Lemma 10.5 is an analogue of a result of R. GÜTING (1961; theorem 4).
10.4. LEMMA. Let $\mathrm{P} \in \Phi[t]$ be given by

$$
\begin{gathered}
P(t)=a_{N} t^{N}+a_{N-1} t^{N-1}+\ldots+a_{1} t+a_{0}=a_{N} \prod_{i=1}^{N}\left(t-\beta_{i}\right), \\
\beta_{i}, a_{i} \in \Phi, a_{N} \neq 0, N \geq 1 .
\end{gathered}
$$

Then
(10.4.1) $H(P)=d g a_{N}+\sum_{i=1}^{N} \max \left(d g \beta_{i}, 0\right)$.

PROOF. Let $R_{1}, R_{2}, \ldots, R_{\ell}$ be the hooking-radii of $P$ in increasing order. Put $R_{0}:=-\infty, R_{\ell+1}:=+\infty$ and define $m \in\{0,1, \ldots, \ell\}$ by $R_{m} \leq 0<R_{m+1}$. From theorem 5.11 we see that

$$
M_{0}(P)=\max _{0 \leq i \leq N} d g a_{i}=d g a_{i_{m}}
$$

and hence that
(10.4.2) $H(P)=d g a_{i_{m}}$.

Now take a $t_{0} \in \Phi$ such that $0<\rho_{0}:=d g t_{0}<R_{m+1}$. Since $\rho_{0}$ is not a hooking-radius, we have
(10.4.3) $\quad \mathrm{dg} \mathrm{P}\left(\mathrm{t}_{0}\right)=\mathrm{M}_{\rho_{0}}(\mathrm{P})$.

Again from theorem 5.11 we see that
(10.4.4) $\quad M_{\rho_{0}}(P)=d g a_{i_{m}}+i_{m} \rho_{0}$.

On the other hand it is clear that
(10.4.5) $d g P\left(t_{0}\right)=d g a_{N}+\sum_{i=1}^{N} \max \left(d g \beta_{i}, 0\right)+v \rho_{0}$,
where v denotes the number of zeros of P with non-positive valuation. But from lemma 5.19 and corollary 5.14 we have $v=i_{m}$. Combining (10.4.2),
(10.4.3), (10.4.4) and (10.4.5) gives the desired

$$
H(P)=d g a_{N}+\sum_{i=1}^{N} \max \left(d g \beta_{i}, 0\right)
$$

10.5. LEMMA. Let $Q \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}][\mathrm{t}]$ be separable of degree $\mathrm{N} \geq 1$ and height H . Let $\beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{N}$ denote the zeros of $Q$. Let $N$ be an arbitrary non-empty subset of

$$
\Delta:=\{(i, j) \mid 1 \leq i \leq N, 1 \leq j \leq N, i<j\}
$$

Then
(10.5.1) $\quad \sum_{N} d g\left(\beta_{i}-\beta_{j}\right) \geq-(N-1) H$.

PROOF. Put

$$
Q(t)=A \prod_{i=1}^{N}\left(t-\beta_{i}\right)
$$

Then the discriminant of $Q$, defined by

$$
D:=A^{2 N-2} \prod_{1 \leq i<j \leq N}\left(\beta_{i}-\beta_{j}\right)^{2}
$$

is an element of $\mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$, see Corollary 0.6. Since $Q$ is separable, the zeros of $Q$ are distinct and thus $D \neq 0$. Therefore

$$
\operatorname{dg} D=(2 N-2) \operatorname{dg} A+2 \sum_{1 \leq i<j \leq N} d g\left(\beta_{i}-\beta_{j}\right) \geq 0
$$

Hence

$$
\sum_{N} d g\left(\beta_{i}-\beta_{j}\right) \geq-(N-1) d g A-\sum_{\Delta \bigvee N} d g\left(\beta_{i}-\beta_{j}\right) .
$$

We may suppose that $\beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \ldots, \beta_{N}$ are arranged in such a way that $\operatorname{dg} \beta_{1} \leq d g \beta_{2} \leq \ldots \leq \operatorname{dg} \beta_{N}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{(i, j) \in \Delta \backslash N} \operatorname{dg}\left(\beta_{i}-\beta_{j}\right) & \leq \sum_{(i, j) \in \Delta \backslash N} \operatorname{dg} \beta_{j} \leq \sum_{(i, j) \in \Delta \backslash N} \max \left(0, \operatorname{dg} \beta_{j}\right) \\
& \leq \sum_{j=1}^{N}(j-1) \max \left(0, \operatorname{dg} \beta_{j}\right) \\
& \leq(N-1) \sum_{j=1}^{N} \max \left(0, d g \beta_{j}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus

$$
\sum_{N} d g\left(\beta_{i}-\beta_{j}\right) \geq-(N-1)\left(d g A+\sum_{j=1}^{N} \max \left(0, d g \beta_{j}\right)\right)
$$

which, by lemma 10.4 , yields

$$
\sum_{N} d g\left(\beta_{i}-\beta_{j}\right) \geq-(N-1) H
$$

Proof of theorem 10.3. Since $K$ is a finite, separable extension of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$, there exists a primitive element $\beta \in K$, i.e. $K=\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)(\beta)$. (See O. ZARISKI and P. SAMUEL (1958), Ch.II, §9 th.19.) We have
(10.3.1) $\quad \alpha_{k i}=\sum_{j=0}^{n-1} a_{k i j} \beta^{j}, \quad a_{k i j} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}(x), k=1,2, \ldots, r ; i=1,2, \ldots, s$.

Let $\sigma_{1}, \sigma_{2}, \ldots, \sigma_{n}$ denote the $n \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$-monomorphisms $K \hookrightarrow \Phi$. For every $k \in\{1,2, \ldots, r\}$ and $i \in\{1,2, \ldots, s\}$ we solve the system of equations

$$
\sigma_{v}\left(\alpha_{k i}\right)=\sum_{j=0}^{n-1} a_{k i j} \sigma_{v}\left(\beta^{j}\right), \quad v=1,2, \ldots, n
$$

in $a_{k i j}, j=0,1, \ldots, n-1$. Since $\operatorname{det}\left(\sigma_{\nu}\left(\beta^{j}\right)\right)_{\nu, j} \neq 0$, we obtain from Cramer's rule

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d g a_{k i j} \leq \max _{1 \leq \nu \leq n} \operatorname{dg} \sigma_{v}\left(\alpha_{k i}\right)+(n-1) \max _{\substack{1 \leq \nu \leq n \\
0 \leq j \leq n-1}} \operatorname{dg} \sigma_{\nu}\left(\beta^{j}\right) \\
&-\operatorname{dg} \operatorname{det}\left(\sigma_{\nu}\left(\beta^{j}\right)\right){ }_{\nu, j} \\
& \leq a+(n-1)^{2} d^{*}(\beta)-d g \prod_{\substack{1 \leq \nu<\mu \leq n}}\left(\sigma_{\nu}(\beta)-\sigma_{\mu}(\beta)\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since the roots $\sigma_{v}(\beta), \nu=1, \ldots, n$ of the minimal polynomial of $\beta$ are distinct, we have according to lemma 10.5

$$
\sum_{1 \leq \nu<\mu \leq n} \operatorname{dg}\left(\sigma_{\nu}(\beta)-\sigma_{\mu}(\beta)\right) \geq-(n-1) h(\beta)
$$

If we define

$$
b_{0}:=(n-1) h(\beta)+(n-1)^{2} d^{*}(\beta)
$$

then

$$
d g a_{k i j} \leq a+b_{0}
$$

Now we consider the following rn linear forms in the $s$ variables $x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{s}$ :

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{s} a_{k i j} x_{i}, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, r ; j=0,1, \ldots, n-1
$$

It follows from lemma 10.2 that there exist $C_{1}, \ldots, C_{s}$ in $\mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}]$, not all of them zero, such that

$$
\operatorname{dg} C_{i}<c
$$

and
(10.3.2)

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{s} a_{k i j} c_{i}\right) \leq a+b_{0}+\left(1-\frac{s}{r n}\right) c
$$

From (10.3.1) and (10.3.2) we obtain

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{s} \alpha_{k i} C_{i}\right) \leq a+b_{0}+\left(1-\frac{s}{r n}\right) c+(n-1) d^{*}(\beta)
$$

10.6. THEOREM. Let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$. Suppose that $\alpha=\lim _{j \rightarrow \infty} \alpha_{j}$, where all the $\alpha_{j}$ are contained in a fixed, finite, separable algebraic extension K of $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$. Then a transcendence measure for $\alpha$ cannot be better than $-\mathrm{C}_{0} \mathrm{NH}+\mathrm{C}_{1} \mathrm{~N}$, where $\mathrm{C}_{0}, \mathrm{C}_{1}$ are suitable positive constants which depend only on $\alpha$.

PROOF. We may suppose that $H \geq 1$. Choose $\theta \in K$ such that $K=\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)(\theta)$ and put $n:=\left[K: \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)\right]$. Since $\alpha=\lim _{j \rightarrow \infty} \alpha_{j}$, there exists an $\alpha_{j}$ such that
(10.6.1) $\quad d g \alpha_{j}=d g \alpha$
and
(10.6.2) $\quad \operatorname{dg}\left(\alpha-\alpha_{j}\right)<-N H-H$.

We consider the linear form

$$
x_{0}+\alpha_{j} x_{1}+\ldots+\alpha_{j}^{N} x_{N}
$$

in the $N+1$ variables $x_{0}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{N}$. If $N \geq n$ we can apply theorem 10.3 and it follows that there exist $C_{0}, C_{1}, \ldots, c_{N} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$, not all zero, such that

$$
d g C_{i}<H
$$

and such that
(10.6.3) $\quad \operatorname{dg}\left(C_{0}+\alpha_{j} C_{1}+\ldots+\alpha_{j}^{N} C_{N}\right) \leq N \max \left(\operatorname{dg}_{\mathrm{j}}, 0\right)+b+\left(1-\frac{N+1}{n}\right) H$,
where b is a non-negative constant depending only on K , i.e. on $\alpha$. From (10.6.1) and (10.6.2) we infer that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{dg}\left\{\left(\alpha-\alpha_{j}\right) C_{1}+\ldots+\left(\alpha^{N}-\alpha_{j}^{N}\right) C_{N}\right\} \leq \\
& \quad \leq \operatorname{dg}\left(\alpha-\alpha_{j}\right)+\max _{1 \leq \nu \leq N}\left\{\operatorname{dg} \frac{\alpha^{\nu}-\alpha_{j}^{\nu}}{\alpha-\alpha_{j}}+\operatorname{dg} C_{v}\right\} \\
& \quad<-N H+(N-1) \max (\operatorname{dg} \alpha, 0) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, using (10.6.3), we obtain
(10.6.4) $\quad \mathrm{dg}\left(\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{Q}}+\alpha \mathrm{C}_{1}+\ldots+\alpha^{\mathrm{N}} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{N}}\right) \leq-\left(\frac{\mathrm{N}+1}{\mathrm{n}}-1\right) \mathrm{H}+\mathrm{N}\left\{\max (\mathrm{dg} \alpha, 0)+\frac{\mathrm{b}}{\mathrm{N}}\right\}$,
which proves our assertion.
10.7. REMARK. All explicitly given elements of $\Phi$ which are up till now known to be transcendental, satisfy the condition of theorem 10.6. In section 9 we already mentioned that the element

$$
\omega:=\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{x^{q^{k}}-x}
$$

is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. (See L.I. WADE (1941), theorem 4.1.) We see that $\omega \in F$ and from theorem 10.6 we infer that a transcendence measure for $\omega$ cannot be better than $-N H$. In 1974 P. BUNDSCHUH proved that there exist positive constants $c_{1}, c_{2}$, depending only on $q$, such that

$$
\operatorname{dg} P(\omega) \geq-c_{1} q^{3 N}-c_{2} N^{2 N_{H}}
$$

for every non-trivial $P \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X][t]$ of degree at most $N$ and height at most H. (See Séminaire Delange-Pisot-Poitou 1974/75, §3 th.2.) Recently
P. BUNDSCHUH has also given transcendence measures for $\psi(1)$ and $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} L_{k}^{-s}, s \in \mathbb{I N}$.
11. A TRANSCENDENCE MEASURE FOR CERTAIN LIOUVILLE NUMBERS

It follows from example 8.3.1 as well as from theorem 9.7 that

$$
c_{0}+\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} c_{k} x^{-k!}, \quad c_{k} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}, k \in \mathbb{N}^{0},
$$

is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. In the following theorem we derive a transcendence measure for these Liouville numbers.
11.1. THEOREM. Let
(11.1.1) $\quad \alpha:=c_{0}+\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} c_{k} x^{-k!}, \quad c_{k} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}, k \in \mathbb{N}^{0}$.

Then for every polynomial $Q \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{x}][\mathrm{t}]$ of degree $\mathrm{N} \geq 1$ and height H one has
(11.1.2) $d g Q(\alpha)>-51\left\{N^{N-1}+N H \log ^{2} 2 H\right\}$.

PROOF. (i) First we suppose that $Q$ is irreducible. Put

$$
\alpha_{k}:=c_{0}+\sum_{i=1}^{k} c_{i} x^{-i!}
$$

Then $\alpha_{k}$ is algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ of degree 1 and height $\mathrm{h}\left(\alpha_{\mathrm{k}}\right)=\mathrm{k}$ :. According to lemma 9.6 we have either $Q\left(\alpha_{k}\right)=0$ or
(11.1.3) $\quad \mathrm{dg} Q\left(\alpha_{k}\right) \geq-(H+N k!)$.

Since all $c_{k}$ in (11.1.1) are non-zero, we have

$$
\operatorname{dg}\left(\alpha-\alpha_{k}\right)=-(k+1):
$$

and

$$
d g \alpha=\operatorname{dg} \alpha_{k}=0
$$

Hence
(11.1.4) $\operatorname{dg}\left(Q(\alpha)-Q\left(\alpha_{k}\right)\right) \leq \operatorname{dg}\left(\alpha-\alpha_{k}\right)+H+\max _{1 \leq i \leq N} \operatorname{dg}\left(\frac{\alpha^{i}-\alpha_{k}^{i}}{\alpha-\alpha_{k}}\right) \leq-(k+1)!+H$.

Now we define
(11.1.5) $\quad \kappa:=\min \{k \in \mathbb{N} \mid k!>\max ((N-1)!, 2 H)\}$.

Then for all $k \geq k$ such that $Q\left(\alpha_{k}\right) \neq 0$ it follows from (11.1.3), (11.1.4) and the triangle-inequality in its sharpened form that
(11.1.6) $\mathrm{dg} Q(\alpha)=\operatorname{dg} Q\left(\alpha_{k}\right) \geq-(H+N k!)$.

Suppose that $Q\left(\alpha_{k}\right)=0$. Since $Q$ is irreducible and since $\alpha_{k}$ is algebraic of degree 1 , this is only possible if $N=1$. Put $Q(t)=A_{1} t+A_{0}$, then it follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \quad Q\left(\alpha_{k+1}\right)=A_{1}\left(\alpha_{k+1}-\alpha_{k}\right)=A_{1} c_{k+1} x^{-(k+1)!}, \\
& \text { i.e. } \quad Q\left(\alpha_{k+1}\right) \neq 0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence at least one of the numbers $Q\left(\alpha_{K}\right)$ and $Q\left(\alpha_{K+1}\right)$ is different from zero and so, in view of (11.1.6), we have
(11.1.7) $\quad d g Q(\alpha) \geq-(H+N(\kappa+1)!)$.

Now we give an upper bound for $(\kappa+1)$ ! in terms of $N$ and $H$. First we suppose that
(11.1.8) $\quad(\mathrm{N}-1)!>2 \mathrm{H}$.

Then $K=N$ if $N \geq 2$ and $k=2$ if $N=1$. Hence (11.1.7) and (11.1.8) give (11.1.9) $\quad \operatorname{dg} Q(\alpha) \geq-\left(\frac{(N-1)!}{2}+N \max ((N+1)!, 6)\right) \geq-9 N^{N-1}$.

Secondly, if
$(11.1 .10)(\mathrm{N}-1)!\leq 2 \mathrm{H}$,
we have $k \geq 3$. Hence

$$
(\kappa+1)!<25(\kappa-1)!\log ^{2}(\kappa-1):
$$

It follows from (11.1.5) and (11.1.10) that

$$
(\kappa-1): \leq 2 \mathrm{H}
$$

Now (11.1.7) yields
(11.1.11) $d g Q(\alpha) \geq-\left(H+50 N H \log ^{2} 2 H\right) \geq-51 N H \log ^{2} 2 H$.

Finally (11.1.2) follows from (11.1.9) and (11.1.11).
(ii) Now let $Q$ be a reducible polynomial of degree $N \geq 1$ and height $H$ and let

$$
Q=Q_{1}^{\mu_{1}} Q_{2}^{\mu_{2}} \cdots Q_{m}^{\mu_{m}}
$$

be a decomposition of $Q$ in irreducible factors $Q_{1}, Q_{2}, \ldots, Q_{m} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X][t]$. Denote the degree and the height of $Q_{i}$ by $N_{i}$ and $H_{i}$ respectively, $i=1,2, \ldots$, Remark that $N_{i} \geq 1, i=1,2, \ldots, m$ and that
(11.1.12) $N=\mu_{1} N_{1}+\mu_{2} N_{2}+\ldots+\mu_{m} N_{m}$.

By lemma 9.5 we have
(11.1.13) $H=\mu_{1} H_{1}+\mu_{2} H_{2}+\ldots+\mu_{m} H_{m}$.

From part (i) of the proof we have

hence
(11.1.14) $d g Q(\alpha) \geq-51 \sum_{i=1}^{m} \mu_{i}\left\{N_{i} N_{i}^{-1}+N_{i} H_{i} \log ^{2} 2 H_{i}\right\}$

$$
\geq-51 \sum_{i=1}^{m}\left(\mu_{i} N_{i}\right)^{\mu_{i} N_{i}-1}-51 N \sum_{i=1}^{m} \mu_{i} H_{i} \log ^{2} 2 H_{i}
$$

Since

$$
(n+m)^{n+m-1} \geq n^{n-1}+m^{m-1}, \quad n, m \in \mathbb{N}
$$

and since

$$
(n+m) \log ^{2} 2(n+m) \geq n \log ^{2} 2 n+m \log ^{2} 2 m, \quad n, m \in N^{0}
$$

relations (11.1.12), (11.1.13) and (11.1.14) give
$\mathrm{dg} Q(\alpha) \geq-51\left\{\mathrm{~N}^{\mathrm{N}-1}+\mathrm{NH} \log ^{2} 2 \mathrm{H}\right\}$.
11.2. THEOREM. The function $\mathrm{f}: \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}^{0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$
f(N, H)=-51\left\{N^{N-1}+N H \log ^{2} 2 H\right\}
$$

is a transcendence measure for the element

$$
\alpha:=c_{0}+\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} c_{k} x^{-k!}, \quad c_{k} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}
$$

PROOF. Obvious from the previous theorem.

## CHAPTER IV

## ON THE TRANSCENDENCE OF CERTAIN VALUES TAKEN BY $E^{0}$-FUNCTIONS

12. A GENERALISATION OF WADE'S ANALOGUE OF THE GELFOND-SCHNEIDER THEOREM
12.1. DEFINITION. A linear function $f: \Phi \rightarrow \Phi$, given by

$$
f(t):=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{k} \frac{t^{q^{k}}}{F_{k}}
$$

is called an $E^{0}$-function if
(i) there exists a finite, separable extension $K$ of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ such that $\alpha_{k} \in K, k=0,1,2, \ldots$,
(ii) there exists a $c \in \mathbb{R}^{\prime}, c>0$, such that

$$
d^{*}\left(\alpha_{k}\right)<c q^{k}, \quad k=0,1,2, \ldots .
$$

The above definition of an $E^{0}$-function differs from the classical $E$ function, which, in addition, contains a condition on the denominators of the coefficients $\alpha_{k}$. (See for instance Th. SCHNEIDER (1957), p.112.)

### 12.2 REMARKS.

(i) An $E^{0}$-function is an entire function.
(ii) The functions $\psi$ and $J_{n}, n \in \mathbb{Z}$, are $E^{0}$-functions.
(iii) Linear polynomials with separable algebraic coefficients are $E^{0}$-functions. (See theorem 3.5.)
(iv) If $f$ and $g$ are $E^{0}$-functions, then

$$
f+g, \Delta_{r} f(r \geq 1), \quad f^{q^{r}}(r \geq 1)
$$

are $E^{0}$-functions.
(v) If $P$ is a linear polynomial with separable algebraic coefficients in $\Phi$ and $f$ is an $E^{0}$-function, then $P \circ f$ is an $E^{0}$-function.

In the proof of theorem 7.7 we have given an exposition of Siegel's method in the field $\Phi$. We shall now use this method to prove the following 12.3. THEOREM. Let $\mathrm{f}_{1}, \ldots, \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n}}$ be $E^{0}$-functions, not all polynomials and none of them identically zero. Suppose that for $1 \leq \nu \leq n$ and $r \in \mathbb{N}$ we have
(12.3.1) $\quad \Delta_{r} f_{v}(t)=R_{v r}\left(f_{1}(t), f_{2}(t), \ldots, f_{n}(t)\right)$
where $R_{v r}\left(t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{n}\right)$ is of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{v r}\left(t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{n}\right)={ }_{0 \leq q} j_{1} \sum_{+\ldots+q^{j_{n}}} r^{r}{ }^{A_{v r j_{1}} \ldots j_{n}} t_{1}^{q^{j_{1}}} t_{2}^{q^{j_{2}}} \ldots t_{n}^{q^{j_{n}}}, \tag{12.3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
{ }^{A_{v r j_{1}} \ldots j_{n} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]}
$$

and for some $c_{0} \in \mathbb{R}, c_{0}>0$,

Then, if $\alpha, \beta \in \Phi, \alpha \neq 0$ and $\beta \notin \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$, at least one of the $2 \mathrm{n}+1$ elements $\beta, f_{1}(\alpha), f_{2}(\alpha), \ldots, f_{n}(\alpha), f_{1}(\alpha \beta), f_{2}(\alpha \beta), \ldots, f_{n}(\alpha \beta)$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$.

This theorem is an analogue of a classical transcendence result on algebraically independent meromorphic functions $f_{1}, f_{2}, \ldots, f_{n}$ of bounded order, whose derivatives can be expressed as a polynomial in $f_{1}, f_{2}, \ldots, f_{n}$ with coefficients in a fixed algebraic number field. From this classical result follow the theorems of Hermite-Lindemann and Gelfond-Schneider. (See for instance S. LANG (1966), p. 21 or Th. SCHNEIDER (1957), p.49).

Before giving the proof of theorem 12.3 we list some special cases as corollaries.
12.4. COROLLARY. The analogue of the theorem of Gelfond-Schneider (theorem 7.7).

PROOF. Take $\mathrm{n}=1, \mathrm{f}_{1}=\psi, \beta \in \Phi \backslash \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X}), \alpha^{*} \in \Phi \backslash\{0\}$ with dg $\alpha^{*}<\frac{\mathrm{q}}{\mathrm{q}-1}$ and $\alpha=\lambda\left(\alpha^{*}\right)$. From (3.8.2) we see that

$$
R_{1 r}(t)=(-1)^{r} t^{q^{r}}, \quad r \in \mathbb{N}
$$

Then it follows from the above theorem that at least one of the elements $\alpha^{*}, \beta, \psi\left(\beta \lambda\left(\alpha^{*}\right)\right)$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$.
12.5. COROLLARY. Let $\xi \in \Phi$ be defined by (2.10.1). If $\beta$ is algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ of degree $\geq 2$, then $\psi(\beta \xi)$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}$ (X).

PROOF. Let $f_{1}=\psi, \alpha=\xi$. Then, since $\beta \notin \mathbb{F}_{q}(x)$, it follows from theorem 12.3 that at least one of the elements $\beta, \psi(\beta \xi), \psi(\xi)$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. From theorem 2.12 it follows that $\psi(\xi)=0$. Hence, since $\beta$ is algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$, we conclude that $\psi(\beta \xi)$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X}) \cdot \square$

If $\beta \in \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ the opposite of the above assertion is true, as shown by the following
12.6. LEMMA. If $\beta \in \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$, then $\psi(\beta \xi)$ is algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$.

PROOF. For $\beta \in \mathbb{F}_{\mathcal{A}}[X]$ the assertion above is obvious from theorem 2.12 . Now put $\beta=\frac{A}{B}, A, B \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X], B \neq 0$. Then it follows from the theorems 2.12 and 2.13 that

$$
0=\psi\left(B \frac{A}{B} \xi\right)=\sum_{j=0}^{d g B}(-1)^{j} \frac{\psi_{j}(B)}{F_{j}} \psi^{q}\left(\frac{A}{B^{j}}\right)
$$

i.e. $\psi\left(\frac{A_{1}}{B^{\prime}}\right)$ is algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$.
12.7. COROLLARY. (GEIJSEL, 1971). Let $\alpha \in \Phi \backslash\{0\}, \beta \in \Phi \backslash \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$ and $\mathrm{n} \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then at least one of the five elements $\beta, J_{n}(\alpha), J_{n}(\alpha \beta), \Delta J_{n}(\alpha), \Delta J_{n}(\alpha \beta)$ is transcendental over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$.

PROOF. First we suppose that $n \geq 0$. Apply theorem 12.3 with $f_{1}=J_{n}$ and $\mathrm{f}_{2}=\Delta \mathrm{J}_{\mathrm{n}}$. According to theorem 4.4, the conditions (12.3.1), (12.3.2) and (12.3.3) are satisfied for $\Delta_{r} f_{1}$ for all $r \in \mathbb{N}$. From lemma 3.12 and theorem 4.2 (ii) we see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Delta_{r} f_{2} & =\Delta_{r} J_{n-1}^{q}=\left(\Delta_{r} J_{n-1}\right)^{q}+\left(x^{q^{r}}-x\right)\left(\Delta_{r-1} J_{n-1}\right)^{q} \\
& =J_{n-1-r}^{q}+\left(x^{r+1}-x\right) J_{n-r}^{q^{r}}=\Delta_{r+1} J_{n}+\left(x^{\left.q^{r}-x\right) \Delta_{r} J_{n}}\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

4.4

It follows again from theorem 4.4 that the three conditions from theorem 12.3 are also satisfied for $\Delta_{r} f_{2}$. This proves the corollary for $n \geq 0$. Now let $n<0$. Suppose $\beta, J_{n}(\alpha), J_{n}(\alpha \beta), \Delta J_{n}(\alpha), \Delta J_{n}(\alpha \beta)$ are algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$. Then it follows from theorem $4.2(\mathrm{i})$ that the elements $\beta, J_{-n}(\alpha), J_{-n}(\alpha \beta), \Delta J_{-n}(\alpha), \Delta J_{-n}(\alpha \beta)$ are all algebraic, which we have just shown not to be true.

Proof of theorem 12.3. Put
(12.3.4) $\quad f_{v}(t)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{v k} \frac{t^{q^{k}}}{F_{k}}, \quad 1 \leq v \leq n$.

Suppose $\beta, f_{1}(\alpha), \ldots, f_{n}(\alpha), f_{1}(\alpha \beta), \ldots, f_{n}(\alpha \beta)$ are algebraic over $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$. Then, for some e $\in \mathbb{N}$,

$$
\beta^{q^{\mathrm{e}}}, \mathrm{f}_{1}^{\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{e}}}(\alpha), \ldots, \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n}}^{\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{e}}}(\alpha), \mathrm{f}_{1}^{\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{e}}}(\alpha \beta), \ldots, \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n}}^{\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{e}}}(\alpha \beta)
$$

are separable over $\mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{q}}(\mathrm{X})$. Let K be a finite, separable algebraic extension of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(\mathrm{X})$ of degree h which contains all these elements and the $\alpha_{\nu k}$, $v=1, \ldots, n ; k=0,1,2, \ldots$. Let $\Gamma \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$ be such that

$$
\Gamma \beta^{q^{e}}, \Gamma f_{\nu}^{q^{e}}(\alpha), \Gamma f_{v}^{q^{e}}(\alpha \beta), \quad v=1, \ldots, n
$$

are algebraic integers of $K$. The natural numbers $k, \lambda$ with

$$
\lambda>3 k
$$

will be chosen later. Put

$$
m:=\kappa+\lambda-1
$$

and put

$$
L(t):=\sum_{\nu=1}^{n} \sum_{j=0}^{2 \lambda}-1 \sum_{i=0}^{2 k}-1 x_{i j \nu} t^{j q^{e}} f_{\nu}^{i q^{e}}(\alpha t),
$$

where the $X_{i j \nu}$ will be determined non-trivially and in such a way that $L(A+B B)=0$ for all $A, B \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$ with $d g A<m, d g B<m$. Moreover the $X_{i j \nu}$ will be algebraic integers in $K$ such that $d^{*}\left(X_{i j \nu}\right)$ is not too large with respect to $\lambda$ and $k$. We have
(12.3.5) $L(A+\beta B)=\sum_{\nu=1}^{n} \sum_{j=0}^{q^{2 \lambda}-1} \sum_{i=0}^{2 \kappa}-1 x_{i j \nu}(A+\beta B) q^{e} f_{\nu}^{i q^{e}}(\alpha A+\alpha \beta B)$.

By the linearity of the $f_{v}$ we have

$$
f_{v}(\alpha A+\alpha \beta B)=f_{v}(\alpha A)+f_{v}(\alpha \beta B)
$$

The expansion formula (3.10.1) gives

$$
f_{\nu}(\alpha A)=\sum_{\mu=0}^{\operatorname{dgA}} \frac{\psi_{\mu}(A)}{F_{\mu}} \Delta_{\mu} f_{\nu}(\alpha)
$$

and hence, by condition (12.3.1),

$$
\begin{aligned}
& f_{v}^{q^{e}}(\alpha A)= \\
& \sum_{\mu=0}^{d g A}\left(\frac{\psi_{\mu}(A)}{F_{\mu}}\right)^{q^{e}} \sum_{0 \leq q}^{j_{1}} \sum_{+\ldots+q}{ }_{j_{n}} q^{\mu} A^{A^{q}}{ }_{\nu \mu j_{1}}^{e} \ldots j_{\bar{n}} f_{1}^{q^{e+j_{1}}}(\alpha) \ldots f_{n}^{q^{e+j_{n}}}(\alpha) .
\end{aligned}
$$

From this formula we see that $f_{V} q^{e}(\alpha A)$ lies in $K$, i.e. is separable. In fact it is a polynomial in $f_{1}^{q^{e}}(\alpha), \ldots, f_{n}^{q^{e}}(\alpha)$ of total degree not exceeding $q^{e+d g A}<q^{m+e}$.

By theorem 2.5 we have

$$
\frac{\psi_{\mu}(A)}{F_{\mu}} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[\mathrm{X}]
$$

and hence $f_{v}^{q^{e}}(\alpha A) \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X]\left[f_{1}^{q^{e}}(\alpha), \ldots, f_{n}^{q^{e}}(\alpha)\right]$. From condition (12.3.3) and from remark 2.6 it follows that

$$
\operatorname{dg} f_{v}^{q^{e}}(\alpha A) \leq q^{e}\left\{(d g A) q^{d g A}+c_{0} q^{d g A}\right\}+q^{d g A} \max \left(d g f_{1}^{q^{e}}(\alpha), \ldots, d g f_{n}^{q^{e}}(\alpha)\right)
$$

Now apply the $h \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$-monomorphisms of $K$. Then we see that

$$
\text { (12.3.6) } \quad d^{*}\left(f_{v}^{q^{e}}(\alpha A)\right) \leq q^{m+e}\left(m+c_{0}\right)+q^{m} \max _{1 \leq v \leq n} d^{*}\left(f_{v}^{q^{e}}(\alpha)\right), \quad v=1,2, \ldots, n
$$

Similarly we have
(12.3.7) $\quad d^{*}\left(f_{v}^{q}(\alpha \beta B)\right) \leq q^{m+e}\left(m+c_{0}\right)+q^{m} \max _{1 \leq v \leq n} d^{*}\left(f_{v}^{q}(\alpha \beta)\right), v=1,2, \ldots, n$.

We observe that the coefficients of the $X_{i j \nu}$ in (12.3.5) are polynomials in

$$
\beta^{q} \text { of degree not exceeding } q^{2 \lambda}
$$

and in

$$
\begin{aligned}
& f_{1}^{q^{e}}(\alpha), \ldots f_{n}^{q^{e}}(\alpha), f_{1}^{q^{e}}(\alpha \beta), \ldots, f_{n}^{q^{e}}(\alpha \beta) \text { of total degree not } \\
& \text { exceeding } q^{m+2 k}
\end{aligned}
$$

with coefficients in $\mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$. Hence, since
$(12 \cdot 3.8) \quad q^{2 \lambda}+q^{2 \kappa+m} \leq q^{2 \lambda+1}$,
the condition
(12.3.9) $\quad \Gamma^{2 \lambda+1} L(A+\beta B)=0, \quad A, B \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[x], \operatorname{dg} A<m, d g B<m$
implies a system of $q^{2 m}$ homogeneous, linear equations, say

$$
\sum_{i, j, v} D_{i j \nu k} x_{i j \nu}=0, \quad k=1,2, \ldots, q^{2 m}
$$

in $n q^{2 \lambda+2 \kappa}$ unknowns $X_{i j \nu}$ with integral algebraic coefficients $D_{i j v k}$. From (12.3.5), (12.3.6) and (12.3.7) we infer that

$$
\begin{aligned}
d^{*}\left(D_{i j \nu k}\right) & \leq q^{2 \lambda+1} d g \Gamma+\left(q^{2 \lambda}-1\right) q^{e}\left(m+d^{*}(\beta)\right)+ \\
& +\left(q^{2 \kappa}-1\right) q^{m+e}\left[m+c_{0}+\max _{1 \leq \nu \leq n}\left\{d^{*}\left(f_{\nu}(\alpha)\right), d^{*}\left(f_{\nu}(\alpha \beta)\right)\right\}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Using (12.3.8), this yields

$$
d^{*}\left(D_{i j \cup k}\right) \leq q^{2 \lambda+e}\left(2 m+c_{1}\right)
$$

where $c_{1}$ is a positive constant independent of $k$ and $\lambda$. According to lemma 6.16 with $r=q^{2 m}, s=n q^{2 \kappa+2 \lambda}$ and

$$
a=q^{2 \lambda+e}\left(2 m+c_{1}\right)
$$

there exist algebraic integers $X_{i j v}$ in $K$, not all zero, such that condition (12.3.9) is satisfied and such that
(12.3.10) $d^{*}\left(X_{i j \nu}\right)<q^{2 \lambda+e}\left(m+c_{2}\right)$,
where $c_{2} \geq 0$ is independent of $\lambda$ and $k$.
From now on we suppose that the $X_{i j v}$ are fixed accordingly.
For $\mu \geq \mathrm{m}$ we define

$$
\begin{aligned}
B(\mu):=\left\{A+B B \mid A, B \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X] ;\right. & A \text { and } B \text { not both zero; } \\
& d g A<\mu, d g B<\mu\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $B=U_{\mu=m}^{\infty} B(\mu)$. The second step of the proof now consists of proving that $L$ vanishes on $B$. We have constructed $L$ such that $L(t)=0$ for $t \in B(m)$. So it is sufficient to prove that for every $\mu \geq m$

$$
(t \in B(\mu) \Rightarrow L(t)=0) \Rightarrow(t \in B(\mu+1) \Rightarrow L(t)=0) .
$$

Since $\beta \notin \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$, the number of elements of $B(\mu)$ is $q^{2 \mu}-1$. Let $t_{0} \in B(\mu+1) \backslash B(\mu)$. If $\lambda$ is chosen large enough, then

$$
d g t_{0} \leq \mu+d^{*}(\beta)<2 \mu .
$$

By the induction hypothesis and by lemma 5.22

$$
L(t) \prod_{a \in B(\mu)}(t-a)^{-1}
$$

is an entire function. Hence we can apply the Maximum Modulus Principle (th.5.16) and we obtain

$$
d g L\left(t_{0}\right)-\sum_{a \in \mathcal{B}(\mu)} d g\left(t_{0}-a\right) \leq \sup _{d g t=2 \mu} d g L(t)-2 \mu\left(q^{2 \mu}-1\right) .
$$

## Therefore

(12.3.11) $d g L\left(t_{0}\right) \leq \sup _{d g t=2 \mu} d g L(t)-\left(\mu-d^{*}(\beta)\right)\left(q^{2 \mu}-1\right)$.

From the definition of $L$ and inequality (12.3.10) we see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sup _{d g t=2 \mu} \operatorname{dg} L(t) & \leq q^{2 \lambda+e}\left(m+c_{2}\right)+2 \mu q^{2 \lambda+e}+ \\
& +q^{2 \kappa+e} \max _{1 \leq \nu \leq n} \sup _{d g t=2 \mu} d g f_{\nu}(\alpha t) .
\end{aligned}
$$

From (12.3.4) and definition 12.1 we have
4.8

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sup _{d g t=2 \mu} d g f_{v}(\alpha t) & \leq \max _{k \geq 0}\left(d g \alpha_{v k}+2 \mu q^{k}+q^{k} d g \alpha-k q^{k}\right) \\
& \leq \max _{k \geq 0} q^{k}\left(c^{(v)}+2 \mu+d g \alpha-k\right) \leq c_{3}^{(v)} q^{2 \mu}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $c^{(\nu)}$ and $c_{3}^{(\nu)}$ are positive constants independent of $\kappa$ and $\lambda$. Hence
(12.3.12) $\sup _{d g t=2 \mu} d g L(t) \leq\left(2 \mu+m+c_{2}\right) q^{2 \lambda+e}+c_{3} q^{2 \mu+2 \kappa+e}$,
where $c_{3}:=\max _{1 \leq \nu \leq n} c_{3}^{(\nu)}$.
Now put

$$
\eta:=\mu-k+1
$$

Then $\eta \geq \lambda$ and it follows from (12.3.11) and (12.3.12) that
(12.3.13) $d g L\left(t_{0}\right) \leq q^{2 n+e}\left[\mu\left(4-q^{2 \kappa-e-2}\right)+c_{2}+c_{3} q^{4 \kappa}+d^{*}(\beta) q^{2 \kappa}\right]$.

From the choice of $t_{0}$ and the definitions of $L$ and $\Gamma$ it follows that

$$
\Gamma^{q^{2 n+1}} L\left(t_{0}\right)
$$

is an algebraic integer of $K$ and therefore its norm is an element of $\mathbb{F}_{q}[X]$. Since $K$ is a finite, separable extension of $\mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$ of degree $h$, we have by lemma 6.10

$$
N_{K \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{q}}(X)\left(L\left(t_{0}\right)\right)=\prod_{\rho=1}^{h} \sigma_{\rho}\left(L\left(t_{0}\right)\right)
$$

where $\sigma_{1}, \ldots, \sigma_{h}$ are the $h \mathbb{F}_{q}(X)$-monomorphisms $K \hookrightarrow \Phi$. Furthermore

$$
\sigma_{\rho}\left(L\left(t_{0}\right)\right)=\sum_{\nu=1}^{n} \sum_{j=0}^{q}-1 \sum_{i=0}^{q \lambda} \sigma_{\rho}^{2 \kappa}-1 \quad\left(x_{i j \nu}\right) \sigma_{\rho}\left(t_{0}^{q}\right)^{\mathrm{e}}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sigma_{\rho}\left(\alpha_{\nu k}^{q}\right) \frac{\sigma_{\rho}^{e}\left(t_{0}^{q^{e}}\right) q^{k_{i}}}{F_{k}^{q^{e}}}\right)^{( }
$$

Analogously to the derivation of (12.3.13) we derive

$$
\operatorname{dg} \sigma_{\rho}\left(L\left(t_{0}\right)\right) \leq q^{2 \eta+e}\left[\mu\left(4-q^{2 \kappa-e-2}\right)+c_{2}+c_{3} q^{4 \kappa}+d^{*}(\beta) q^{2 \kappa}\right]
$$

Hence
(12.3.14) $\quad d g N_{K \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{q}}(X)\left(\Gamma^{2 \eta+1} L\left(t_{0}\right)\right) \leq h q^{2 \eta+e}\left\{\mu\left(4-q^{2 \kappa-e-2}\right)+c_{4} q^{4 \kappa}\right\}$, where $c_{4}>0$ is independent of $\kappa$ and $\lambda$. If $\kappa$ is chosen such that

$$
4-q^{2 \kappa-e-2}<0
$$

and then $\lambda$ is chosen such that $d^{*}(\beta)<m$ and such that

$$
m\left(4-q^{2 \kappa-e-2}\right)+c_{4} q^{4 \kappa}<0
$$

it follows from (12.3.14) that $L\left(t_{0}\right)=0$. Hence we have proved that $L$ vanishes on $B(\mu+1)$.

Now $k$ and $\lambda$ are fixed such that $L$ vanishes on $B$. According to the Product Formula for Entire Functions (Corollary 5.24), we have for every fixed $\mu(\mu \geq m)$

$$
L(t)=\gamma t^{\rho} \prod_{a \in B(\mu)}\left(1-\frac{t}{a}\right) \prod_{b \in R^{\star} \backslash B(\mu)}\left(1-\frac{t}{b}\right),
$$

where $\rho \in \mathbb{N}^{0}, \gamma \in \Phi^{*}, R^{*}=R \backslash\{0\}$ and where $R$ denotes the set of zeros of L. We now apply the Maximum Modulus Principle on

$$
\prod_{\mathrm{b} \in R^{\star} \backslash B(\mu)}\left(1-\frac{\mathrm{t}}{\mathrm{~b}}\right)
$$

Comparing the maximal value on $\{t \in \Phi \mid d g t=2 \mu\}$ and the value in $t=0$, the Maximum Modulus Principle (theorem 5.16) yields
(12.3.15) $\sup _{d g t=2 \mu} d g \prod_{b \in R^{*} \backslash B(\mu)}\left(1-\frac{t}{b}\right) \geq 0$.

Further we write

$$
\prod_{a \in B(\mu)}\left(1-\frac{t}{a}\right)=\frac{\prod_{a \in B(\mu)}(a-t)}{\prod_{a \in B(\mu)}^{a}} .
$$

Then it follows from (12.3.15) that
4.10
(12.3.16) $\sup _{\operatorname{dgt}=2 \mu} \mathrm{dg} L(t) \geq \mathrm{dg} \gamma+2 \mu \rho+2 \mu\left(\mathrm{q}^{2 \mu}-1\right)+$

$$
-\left(\mu+\alpha^{*}(\beta)\right)\left(q^{2 \mu}-1\right) .
$$

For $\mu$ large enough (12.3.12) and (12.3.16) are contradictory.

REFERENCES
[1] ADAMS, W.W., Transcendental numbers in the p-adic domain, Amer. J. Math. 88(1966), 279-307.
[2] ADAMSON, I.T., Introduction to field theory, Oliver \& Boyd, London, 1964.
[3] AMICE, Y., Les nombres p-adiques, Presses Universitaires de France, Paris, 1975.
[4] ARMITAGE, J.V., The Thue-Siegel-Roth theorem in characteristic $p$, Journ. of Algebra 9 (1968), 183-189.
[5] ARTIN, E., Algebraic numbers and algebraic functions, Nelson, London, 1967.
[6] BAUM, L.E. and M.M. SWEET, Continued fractions of algebraic power series in characteristic 2., Annals of Math. 103(1976), 593-610.
[7] BOURBAKI, N., Elẻments de mathématique, Algèbre Commutative, Hermann, Paris, 1964.
[8] BUNDSCHUH, P., Quelques résultats sur les approximations diophantiennes, Sém. Delange-Pisot-Poitou (Groupe d'étude de thēorie des nombres) $16(1974 / 75), n \div 14$.
[9] BUNDSCHUH, P., Transzendenzmasze in Körpern formaler Laurentreihen, (to appear).
[10] CARLITZ, L., On certain functions connected with polynomials in a Galois field, Duke Math. J., 1(1935), 137-168.
[11] CARLITZ, L., Some special functions over $G F(q, x)$, Duke Math. J., 27(1960), 139-158.
[12] CIJSOUW, P.L., Transcendence measures, thesis, Amsterdam, 1972.
[13] CIJSOUW, P.L. and R. TIJDEMAN, On the transcendence of certain power series of algebraic numbers, Acta Arith. 23(1973), 301-305.
[14] DIEUDONNÉ, J., Eléments d'Analyse I, Gauthier-Villars, Paris, 1969.
[15] FABER, G., Über arithmetische Eigenschaften analytischer Funktionen, Math. Ann. 58(1904), 545-557.
[16] FEL'DMAN, N.I., Approximations of certain transcendental numbers $I$, Izv. Akad. Nauk SSSR, Ser. Mat. 15(1951), 53-74 (in Russian). English translation: Amer. Math. Soc. Transl. (2) 59(1966), 224-245.
[17] GEIJSEL, J.M., Transcendence properties of the Carlitz-Besselfunctions, Math. Centre Report ZW 2/71, Amsterdam, 1971.
[18] GEIJSEL, J.M., Schneider's method in fields of characteristic $p \neq 0$, Math. Centre Report ZW 17/73, Amsterdam, 1973.
[19] GILL, B.P., An analogue for algebraic functions of the Thue-SiegelRoth theorem, Annals. of Math. 31(1930), 207-218.
[20] GROOT, J. de, Bemerkung über die analytische Fortsetzung in bewerteten Körpern, Indag. Math. $\underline{4}$ (1942), 120-122.
[21] GÜNTZER, U., Zur Funktionentheorie einer Veränderlichen über einem vollständigen nichtarchimedischen Grundkörper, Archiv Math. (Basel) 17(1966), 415-431.
[21] GUTING, R., Approximation of algebraic numbers by algebraic numbers, Mich. Math. J. $\underline{8}(1961)$, 149-159.
[22] HAYES, D.R., Explicit class field theory for rational function fields, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 189(1974), 77-91.
[23] LANG, S., Introduction to transcendental numbers, Addison-Wesley P.C., Reading, Mass., 1966.
[24] LAZARD, M., Les zéros d'une fonction analytique d'une variable sur un corps valué complet, Publ. Math. IHES 14(1962), 47-75.
[25] MAHLER, K., on a theorem of Liouville in fields of positive characteristic, Canad. J. Math. 1 (1949), 397-400.
[26] MAHLER, K., An application of Jensen's formula to polynomials, Mathematika 7(1960), 98-100.
[27] MONNA, A.F., Analyse non-archimedienne, Springer, Berlin, 1970.
[28] OSGOOD, C.F., Effective bounds on the "Diophantine Approximation" of algebraic functions over fields of arbitrary characteristic and applications to differential equations, Indag. Math. 37(1975), 105-119.
[29] PERRON, O., Algebra I, Göschen, Berlin, 1927.
[30] ROBBA, Ph., Fonctions analytiques sur les corps valués ultramétriques complets, Astérisque 10(1973), 109-218.
[31] RIBENBOIM, P., Algebraic numbers, Wiley-Interscience, New York, 1972.
[32] SCHNEIDER, Th., Einführung in die transzendenten Zahlen, Springer, Berlin, 1957.
[33] SCHNIRELMAN, L., Uber Funktionen in algebraisch abgeschlossenen bewerteten Körpern, Bull. d. l'Ac. Sci. URSS, Sér. Math. 1938 (Russian).
[34] SCHOBE, W., Beiträge zur Funktionentheorie in nichtarchimedisch bewerteten Körpern, Helios Verlag GMBH, Münster, 1930 (thesis, unobtainable). Review in Jahrbuch über die Fortschritte der Mathematik 56(1930), 141-142.
[35] SPENCER jr., S.M., Transcendental numbers over certain function fields, Duke Math. J. 19(1952), 93-105.
[36] TATE, J., Rigid analytic spaces, Inventiones Math. 12(1971), 257-289.
[37] WADE, L.I., Certain quantities transcendental over GF ( $\left.{ }^{n}, x\right)$, Duke Math. J. 8(1941), 701-720.
[38] WADE, L.I., Certain quantities transcendental over GF ( $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{n}}, \mathrm{x}$ ) II, Duke Math. J. 10 (1943), 587-594.
[39] WADE, L.I., Two types of function fields transcendental numbers, Duke Math. J. 11(1944), 755-758.
[40] WADE, L.I., Remarks on the Carlitz $\psi$-functions, Duke Math. J. 13(1946), 71-78.
[41] WADE, L.I., Transcendence properties of the Carlitz $\psi$-functions, Duke Math. J. 13(1946), 79-85.
[42] WAERDEN, B.L. van der, Algebra I, Springer, Berlin, 1960.
[43] WEISS, E., Algebraic number theory, Mc.Graw-Hill, New York, 1963.
[44] ZARISKI, O. and P. SAMUEL, Commutative Algebra I, v. Nostrand, New York, 1958.

LIST OF DEFINITIONS

| definition of: | stated on page: |
| :---: | :---: |
| algebraic element | 0.3 |
| algebraic integer of $\Phi$ | 2.2 |
| analytic function | 1.31 |
| Carlitz- $\psi$-function | 1.11 |
| Cauchy-sequence | 1.2 |
| completion, complete | 1.2 |
| conjugated elements | 2.3 |
| convergent sequence | 1.2 |
| $d(f, \rho)$ | 1.38 |
| $\alpha^{*}(\alpha)$ | 2.6 |
| $\Delta$-operator, $\Delta_{n}$ | 1.24 |
| degree of an algebraic element | 0.4 |
| dg (valuation) | 1.1, 1.6 |
| denominator | 2.2 |
| derivative | 0.4 |
| divisor | 0.1 |
| $E^{0}$-function | 4.1 |
| entire function | 1.31 |
| expansion formula | 1.26 |
| $F$ | 1.2 |
| $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}}$ | 1.7 |
| field polynomial | 1.3 |
| gap series | 3.11 |
| height (of polynomial, of algebraic element) | 3.3 |
| hooking-radius | 1.33 |
| $\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{k}}$ | 1.34 |
| integral algebraic element | 2.2 |
| irreducible polynomial | 0.1 |
| $J_{n}$-function | 1.28 |
| $L_{\text {k }}$ | 1.7 |
| $\lambda$-function | 1.16 |
| least common multiple | 2.1 |


| definition of: | stated on page: |
| :---: | :---: |
| linear function | 1.20 |
| Liouville number | 3.1 |
| $M_{r}(\mathrm{f})$ | 1.32 |
| maximum modulus principle | 1.38 |
| minimal polynomial | 0.4, 2.2 |
| monic polynomial | 0.2 |
| monic element of $\mathrm{Fr}_{\mathrm{q}}[\mathrm{x}]$ | 2.1 |
| - monomorphism | 0.2 |
| norm $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{E} \rightarrow \mathrm{K}}(\alpha)$ | 1.3 |
| $P_{r}$ | 1.32 |
| $\Phi$ | 1.6 |
| $\psi$-function | 1.11 |
| $\psi_{\mathrm{k}}$-polynomial | 1.8 |
| power series | 1.21 |
| primitive element | 0.2 |
| product formula for entire functions | 1.49 |
| radius of convergence | 1.21 |
| relatively prime | 2.1 |
| resultant | 3.5 |
| separable (polynomial, element, extension) | 0.4 |
| transcendence measure | 3.17 |
| transcendental element | 0.3 |

INDEX OF SPECIAL SYMBOLS

Symbol:
$\left(A_{1}, A_{2}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)=1$
$\mathbb{C}$
dg
$\mathrm{d}^{*}(\alpha)$
$\alpha(f, \rho)$
[E:K]
$\mathbb{F}_{q}$
$\mathbb{F}_{q}[x]$
$F_{q}(X)$
$\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}}$
$\mathrm{F}_{-\mathrm{n}}^{-1}$
$F_{r}$
F
$\|f\|_{r}$
H(P)
$h(\alpha)$
$i_{k}$
$\mathrm{J}_{\mathrm{n}}{ }^{\text {* }}$
$L_{k}$
$M_{r}$ (f)
$\mathbb{N}, \mathbb{N N}^{0}$
$N_{E \rightarrow K}(\alpha)$
$P_{r}$
Q 0.1
q
$\mathbb{R}$
$\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{k}}$
$R\left[t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{n}\right]$
u
$\mathbb{Z}$
defined on page:
2.1
0.1
1.1, 1.6
2.6
1.38
1.2
0.1, 1.1
1.1
1.1
1.7
1.28
1.30
1.2
1.32
3.3
3.3
1.34
1.28
0.1
1.7
1.32
0.1
1.3
1.32
1.1
0.1
1.34
0.1
1.11
0.1

Symbol:
$\Delta, \Delta_{n}$
$\lambda$ * 1.16
$\Phi$
$\Phi[[t]]$
$\psi$
$\psi_{\mathrm{k}}$
$\xi$
$\Omega$
$\varnothing$
$\square$

Defined on page:
1.24
1.6
1.32
1.11
1.8
1.12
1.2
0.1
0.1

## OTHER TITLES IN THE SERIES MATHEMATICAL CENTRE TRACTS

A leaflet containing an order-form and abstracts of all publications mentioned below is available at the Mathematisch Centrum, Tweede Boerhaavestraat 49, Amsterdam-1005, The Netherlands. Orders should be sent to the same address.

MCT 1 T. VAN DER WALT, Fixed and almost fixed points, 1963. ISBN 906196 0029.

MCT 2 A.R. BLOEMENA, Sampling from a graph, 1964. ISBN 9061960037.
MCT 3 G. DE Leve, Generalized Markovian decision processes, part I: Model and method, 1964. ISBN 9061960045.
MCT 4 G. DE LEVE, Generalized Markovian decision processes, part II: Probabilistic background, 1964. ISBN 9061960053.
MCT 5 G. DE LEVE, H.C. TIJMS \& P.J. WEEDA, Generalized Markovian decision processes, Applications, 1970. ISBN 9061960517.
MCT 6 M.A. MAURICE, Compact ordered spaces, 1964. ISBN 9061960061.
MCT 7 W.R. VAN ZWET, Convex transformations of random variables, 1964. ISBN 906196007 x.
MCT 8 J.A. ZONNEVELD, Automatic numerical integration, 1964. ISBN 906196 0088.

MCT 9 P.C. BAAYEN, Universal morphisms, 1964. ISBN 9061960096.
MCT 10 E.M. DE JAGER, Applications of distributions in mathematical physics, 1964. ISBN 906196010 x.

MCT 11 A.B. PAALMAN-DE MIRANDA, TopoZogical semigroups, 1964. ISBN 906196 0118.

MCT 12 J.A.TH.M. VAN BERCKEL, H. BRANDT CORSTIUS, R.J. MOKKEN \& A. VAN WIJNGAARDEN, Formal properties of newspaper Dutch, 1965. ISBN 9061960134.
MCT 13 H.A. LAUWERIER, Asymptotic expansions, 1966, out of print; replaced by MCT 54 and 67.
MCT 14 H.A. LAUWERIER, CaZculus of variations in mathematical physics, 1966. ISBN 9061960207.
MCT 15 R. DOORNBOS, Slippage tests, 1966. ISBN 9061960215.
MCT 16 J.W. DE BAKKER, Formal definition of programming languages with an application to the definition of ALGOL 60, 1967. ISBN 906196 0223.

MCT 17 R.P. VAN DE RIET, Formula manipuZation in ALGOL 60, part 1, 1968. ISBN 9061960258.
MCT 18 R.P. VAN DE RIET, FormuZa manipulation in ALGOL 60, part 2, 1968. ISBN 906196038 x.
MCT 19 J. VAN DER SLOT, Some properties related to compactness, 1968. ISBN 9061960266.
MCT 20 P.J. VAN DER HOUWEN, Finite difference methods for solving partial differential equations, 1968. ISBN 9061960274.

MCT 21 E. WATTEL, The compactness operator in set theory and topology, 1968. ISBN 9061960282.

MCT 22 T.J. DEKKER, ALGOL 60 procedures in numerical algebra, part 1, 1968. ISBN 9061960290.
MCT 23 T.J. DEKKER \& W. HOFFMANN, ALGOL 60 procedures in numerical algebra, part 2, 1968. ISBN 9061960304.
MCT 24 J.W. DE BAKKER, Recursive procedures, 1971. ISBN 9061960606.
MCT 25 E.R. PAERL, Representations of the Lorentz group and projective geometry, 1969. ISBN 9061960398.
mCt 26 European Meeting 1968, selected statistical papers, part I, 1968. ISBN 9061960312.
MCT 27 EUROPEAN MEETING 1968, Selected statistical papers, part II, 1969. ISBN 9061960401.
MCT 28 J. OOSTERHOFF, Combination of one-sided statistical tests, 1969. ISBN 906196041 x.

MCT 29 J. VERHOEFF, Error detecting decimal codes, 1969. ISBN 9061960428.
MCT 30 H. BRANDT CORSTIUS, Excercises in computational Zinguistics, 1970. ISBN 9061960525.
MCT 31 W. MOLENAAR, Approximations to the Poisson, binomial and hypergeometric distribution functions, 1970. ISBN 9061960533.
MCT 32 L. DE HAAN, On regular variation and its application to the weak convergence of sample extremes, 1970. ISBN 9061960541.
MCT 33 F.W. STEUTEL, Preservation of infinite divisibility under mixing and related topics, 1970. ISBN 9061960614.
MCT 34 I. JUHÁSZ, A. VERBEEK \& N.S. KROONENBERG, Cardinal functions in topoZogy, 1971. ISBN 9061960622.
MCT 35 M.H. VAN EMDEN, An analysis of complexity, 1971. ISBN 9061960630.
MCT 36 J. GRASMAN, On the birth of boundary Zayers, 1971. ISBN 9061960649.
MCT 37 J.W. DE BAKKER, G.A. BLAAUW, A.J.W. DUIJVESTIJN, E.W. DIJKSTRA, P.J. VAN DER HOUWEN, G.A.M. KAMSTEEG-KEMPER, F.E.J. KRUSEMAN Aretr, W.L. VAN der Poel, J.P. SchaAp-Kruseman, M.V. Wilkes \& G. ZOUTENDIJK, MC-25 Informatica Symposium, 1971. ISBN 9061960657.
MCT 38 W.A. VERLOREN VAN THEMAAT, Automatic analysis of Dutch compound words, 1971. ISBN 9061960738.

MCT 39 H. BAVINCK, Jacobi series and approximation, 1972. ISBN 9061960746.
MCT 40 H.C. TIJMS, Analysis of ( $s, S$ ) inventory models, 1972. ISBN 9061960754.
MCT 41 A. VERBEEK, Superextensions of topological spaces, 1972. ISBN 90 61960762.

MCT 42 W. VERVAAT, Success epochs in Bernoulli trials (with applications in number theory), 1972. ISBN 9061960770.
MCT 43 F.H. RUYMGAART, Asymptotic theory of rank tests for independence, 1973. ISBN 9061960819.

MCT 44 H. BART, Meromorphic operator valued functions, 1973. ISBN 9061960827.

MCT 45 A.A. BALKEMA, Monotone transformations and limit Zows, 1973. ISBN 9061960835.
MCT 46 R.P. VAN DE RIET, ABC ALGOI, A portable language for formula manipuZation systems, part 1: The Zanguage, 1973. ISBN 9061960843.
MCT 47 R.P. VAN DE RIET, $A B C$ ALGOL, A portable language for formula manipuZation systems, part 2: The compiler, 1973. ISBN 9061960851.
mCT 48 F.E.J. Kruseman Aretz, P.J.W. ten Hagen \& H.L. OUdShoorn, An ALGOL 60 compiler in ALGOL 60, Text of the MC-compiler for the EL-X8, 1973. ISBN 906196086 x.

MCT 49 H. KOK, Connected orderable spaces, 1974. ISBN 9061960886.
MCT 50 A. VAN WiJngaarden, B.J. Mailloux, J.E.L. Peck, C.H.A. Koster, M. SINTZOFF, C.H. LINDSEY, L.G.L.T. MEERTENS \& R.G. FISKER (Eds), Revised report on the algorithmic language ALGOL 68, 1976. ISBN 90 6196. 0894.

MCT 51 A. HORDIJK, Dynamic programming and Markov potential theory, 1974. ISBN 9061960959.
MCT 52 P.C. BAAYEN (ed.), Topological structures, 1974. ISBN 9061960967.
MCT 53 M.J. FABER, Metrizability in generalized ordered spaces, 1974. ISBN 90 6196. 0975.

MCT 54 H.A. LAUWERIER, Asymptotic analysis, part 1, 1974. ISBN 9061960983.
MCT 55 M. HALL JR. \& J.H. VAN LINT (Eds), Combinatorics, part 1: Theory of designs, finite geometry and coding theory, 1974. ISBN 9061960991.
MCT 56 M. HALL JR. \& J.H. VAN LINT (Eds), Combinatorics, part 2: graph theory, foundations, partitions and combinatorial geometry, 1974. ISBN 9061961009.

MCT 57 M. HALL JR. \& J.H. VAN LINT (Eds), Combinatorics, part 3: Combinatorial group theory, 1974. ISBN 9061961017.
MCT 58 W. ALBERS, Asymptotic expansions and the deficiency concept in statistics, 1975. ISBN 9061961025.
MCT 59 J.L. MIJNHEER, Sample path properties of stabie processes, 1975. ISBN 9061961076.
MCT 60 F. GÖBEL, Queueing models involving buffers, 1975. ISBN 9061961084.

* MCT 61 P. VAN EMDE BOAS, Abstract resource-bound classes, part 1. ISBN 9061961092.
* MCT 62 P. VAN EMDE BOAS, Abstract resource-bound classes, part 2. ISBN 9061961106.

MCT 63 J.W. DE BAKKER (ed.), Foundations of computer science, 1975. ISBN 9061961114.
MCT 64 W.J. DE SCHIPPER, Symmetric closed categories, 1975. ISBN 906196 1122.

MCT 65 J. DE VRIES, Topological transformation groups 1 A categorical approach, 1975. ISBN 9061961130.
MCT 66 H.G.J. PIJLS, Locally convex algebras in spectral theory and eigenfunction expansions, 1976. ISBN 9061961149.

* MCT 67 H.A. LAUWERIER, Asymptotic analysis, part 2. ISBN 906196119 x.

MCT 68 P.P.N. DE GROEN, Singularly perturbed differential operators of second order, 1976. ISBN 9061961203.

MCT 69 J.K. LENSTRA, Sequencing by enumerative methods, 1977. ISBN 9061961254.
MCT 70 W.P. DE ROEVER JR., Recursive program schemes: semantics and proof theory, 1976. ISBN 9061961270.
MCT 71 J.A.E.E. VAN NUNEN, Contracting Markov decision processes, 1976. ISBN 9061961297.
MCT 72 J.K.M. JANSEN, Simple periodic and nonperiodic Lamé functions and their applications in the theory of conical waveguides,1977. ISBN 9061961300.

мCT 73 D.M.R. LeIVANT, Absoluteness of intuitionistic logic, 1979. ISBN 906196122 x.
MCT 74 H.J.J. TE RIELE, $A$ theoretical and computational study of generalized aliquot sequences, 1976. ISBN 9061961319.
MCT 75 A.E. BROUWER, Treelike spaces and related connected topological spaces, 1977. ISBN 9061961327.
MCT 76 M. REM, Associons and the closure statement, 1976. ISBN 9061961351.
мCT 77 W.C.M. KALLENBERG, Asymptotic optimality of likelihood ratio tests in exponential fomilies, 1977 ISBN 9061961343.
MCT 78 E. DE JONGE, A.C.M. VAN ROOIJ, Introduction to Riesz spaces, 1977. ISBN 9061961335.

MCT 79 M.C.A. VAN ZUIJLEN, Empirical distributions and rankstatistics, 1977. ISBN 9061961459.

MCT 80 P.W. HEMKER, A numerical study of stiff two-point boundary problems, 1977. ISBN 9061961467.

MCT 81 K.R. APT \& J.W. DE BAKKER (Eds), Foundations of computer science II, part 1, 1976. ISBN 9061961408.

MCT 82 K.R. APT \& J.W. DE BAKKER (Eds), Foundations of computer science II, part 2, 1976. ISBN 9061961416.
mCT 83 L.S. van Bentem Jutting, Checking Landau's "Grundlagen" in the AUTOMATH system, 1979 ISBN 9061961475.
MCT 84 H.L.L. BUSARD, The translation of the elements of Euclid from the Arabic into Latin by Hermann of Carinthia (?) books vii-xii, 1977. ISBN 9061961483.

MCT 85 J. VAN MILL, Supercompactness and Wallman spaces, 1977. ISBN 9061961513.
mCT 86 S.G. VAn der Meulen \& M. Veldhorst, Tormix I, 1978. ISBN 9061961521.

* MCT 87 S.G. VAN DER MEULEN \& M. VELDHORST, Torpix II, ISBN 906196153 x.
MCT 88 A. SCHRIJVER, Matroids and linking systems, 1977. ISBN 9061961548.

MCT 89 J.W. DE ROEVER, Complex Fourier transformation and analytic functionals with unbounded carriers, 1978. ISBN 9061961556.
MCT 90 L.P.J. GROENEWEGEN, Characterization of optimal strategies in dynamic games, 1979. ISBN 9061961564.
MCT 91 J.M. GEYSEL, Transcendence in fields of positive characteristic, 1979. ISBN 9061961572.

мСт 92 P.J. WEEDA, Finite generalized Markov programing,1979. ISBN 9061961580.

MCT 93 H.C. TIJMS (ed.) \& J. WESSELS (ed.), Markor decision theory, 1977. ISBN 9061961602.
MCT 94 A. BIJLSMA, Simultaneous approximations in transcendental number theory, 1978. ISBN 9061961629.
MCT 95 K.M. VAN HEE, Bayesian control of Markov chains, 1978. ISBN 9061961637.

* MCT 96 P.M.B. VITÁNYI, Lindenmayer systems: structure, languages, and growth functions, . ISBN 9061961645.
* MCT 97 A. FEDERGRUEN, Markovian control problems; functional equations and algorithms, . ISBN 9061961653.
MCT 98 R. GEEL, Singular perturbations of hyperbolic type, 1978. ISBN 9061961661

MCT 99 J.K. LENSTRA, A.H.G. RINNOOY KAN \& P. VAN EMDE BOAS, Interfaces between computer science and operations research, 1978. ISBN 906196170 x.
MCT 100 P.C. BAAYEN, D. VAN DULST \& J. OOSTERHOFF (Eds), Proceedings bicentennial congress of the Wiskundig Genootschap, part 1,1979. ISBN 9061961688.
MCT 101 P.C. BAAYEN, D. VAN DULST \& J. OOSTERHOFF (Eds), Proceedings bicentennial congress of the Wiskundig Genootschap, part 2,1979. ISBN 9091961696.
MCT 102 D. VAN DULST, Reflexive and superreflexive Banach spaces, 1978. ISBN 9061961718.

MCT 103 K . VAN HARN, Classifying infinitely divisible distributions by functional equations,1978. ISBN 9061961726.
мСT 104 J.M. VAN WOUWE, Go-spaces and generalizations of metrizability,1979. ISBN 9061961734.

* MCT 105 R. HELMERS, Edgeworth expansions for linear combinations of order statistics, . ISBN 9061961742.
MCT 106 A. SCHRIJVER (Ed.), Packing and covering in combinatorics, 1979. ISBN 9061961807.
MCT 107 C. DEN HEIJER, The numerical solution of nonlinear operator equations by imbedding methods, 1979. ISBN 9061961750.
MCT 108 J.W. DE BAKKER \& J. VAN LEEUWEN (Eds), Foundations of computer science III, part 1, 1979. ISBN 9061961769.

MCT 109 J.W. DE BAKKER \& J. VAN LEEUWEN (Eds), Foundations of computer science III, part 2, 1979. ISBN 9061961777.
MCT 110 J.C. VAN VLIET, ALGOL 68 transput, part I,1979 . ISBN 9061961785.
MCT 111 J.C. VAN VLIET, ALGOL 68 transput, part II: An implementation model, 1979. ISBN 9061961793.

MCT 112 H.C.P. BERBEE, Random walks with stationary increments and Renewal theory, 1979. ISBN 906196.1823.
MCT 113 T.A.B. SNIJDERS, Asymptotic optimality theory for testing problems with restricted alternatives, 1979. ISBN 9061961831.
MCT 114 A.J.E.M. JANSSEN, Application of the Wigner distribution to harmonic analysis of generalized stochastic processes, 1979. ISBN 906196184 x.
MCT 115 P.C. BAAYEN \& J. VAN MILL (Eds), Topological Structures II, part 1, 1979. ISBN 9061961855.

MCT 116 P.C. BAAYEN \& J. VAN MILL (Eds), Topological Structures II, part 2, 1979. ISBN 9061961866.

MCT 117 P.J.M. KALLENBERG, Branching processes with continuous state space, 1979. ISBN 9061961882.

MCT 118 P. GROENEBOOM, Large deviations and Asymptotic efficiencies, 1980. ISBN 9061961904

